Managing Lake Basins Practical Approaches for Sustainable Use

(Final Report for GEF-Medium Sized Project: Towards a Lake Basin Management Initiative)

- indicated in their native languages. Logos on bottom.

Front and back covers to be a single, continuous stylized map of the world with lakes

- 1 Additional Front Matter will include:
- 2
- 3 Publication Data
- 4 List of Tables
- 5 List of Figures
- 6 List of Boxes
- 7 List of Acronyms and Abbreviations
- 8 Dedication?

- 10 Executive Summary (also to be published separately)
- 11
- 12 Back Matter will include several Appendices, a Glossary and a CD-ROM of Volume 2
- 13 (Experience and Lessons Learned Briefs) and Volume 3 (Thematic Papers). An electronic
- 14 copy of Volume 1 (this main report) will also be included on the CD. The CD will have a
- 15 search mechanism.16
- 17

1 Table of Contents

3	Table of Contentsii	i
4	Forewordvi	i
5	Acknowledgementsiv	K
6	Structure of the Reportx	i
7	Section I. Understanding the Resource1	1
8	Chapter 1: Biophysical Characteristics of Lakes	3
9 10 11 12 13 14	Extent and Global Distribution of Lakes	3 5 5 6
15	Chapter 2. Human Use of Lakes	J
16 17 18 19 20 21 22	A Lake; its Development and Management	9 0 3 5 8
23	Section II. Meeting the Governance Challenge23	3
24	Chapter 3. Effective Institutions: Responding to Change	5
25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38	Institutions: Society's Response to Scarcity.25What are effective institutions?25A Typology of Institutional Forms for Lake Basin Management26Customary and self-regulated management26Coordinating committee.27Coordinating agency27Executive (regulatory) agency28The Role of Local governments26Evolution of integrated lake basin management26The governance framework for lake basin management30Transparency and accountability.37Customary rights.37The necessity of harmonization37	566778890011
39	Towards effective institutions	
40	Chapter 4: Identifying Effective Policies: Incentives and Regulations	
41 42 43 44 45 46	A Not-so-simple Example	5 5 7 8
47	Lessons of Past Experience: Increasing the chances for successful policy	3

1	Policies, Policy Tools and Governance	. 45
2	Chapter 5: Involving People: Values, Education and Participation	. 47
3	Who are the "People"?	. 48
4	Farmers and Agriculturalists	
5	Business and Industry	. 48
6	Youth	. 48
7	Indigenous People	. 49
8	Women	
9	Non-Governmental Organizations (NGOs)	
10	Local Governments	
11	Public Participation and Empowerment	
12	Community-level Participation	
13	Lessons Learned Regarding Public Participation	. 51
14	Chapter 6. Technological Responses: Possibilities and Limitations	. 55
15	Watershed-based Measures	. 58
16	Wastewater Diversion	. 58
17	Conventional Wastewater Treatment (Primary and Secondary Treatment)	. 58
18	Advanced Wastewater Treatment (Tertiary Treatment)	. 59
19	Industrial Wastewater Treatment	. 60
20	Constructed Wetlands	
21	Reforestation	
22	In-Lake Measures	. 63
23	Predators	
24	Biomanipulation	
25	Biocides	
26	Aeration	
27	Freshwater Diversion into a Basin	
28	Dredging	
29 20	Harvesting	
30	Chapter 7. Informing the Process: The Role of Science and Monitoring	
31	Information Needs for Lake Basin Management	
22		. 67
32 22	Use of Scientific Information	
33	Showing limits to a resource	. 68
33 34	Showing limits to a resource Enlightening hard to see connections	. 68 . 68
33 34 35	Showing limits to a resource Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts)	. 68 . 68 . 70
33 34 35 36	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling.	68 68 70 70
33 34 35 36 37	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling "Non-use" of Science.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71
33 34 35 36	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71 . 72
33 34 35 36 37 38	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring To assess baseline conditions.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72
33 34 35 36 37 38 39	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 74
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity. Sharing Information. Use of Indicators	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 74
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections . Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts)	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 74
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People	68 68 70 71 72 72 73 73 73 74 74 74 74 74 75 75
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 44 45 46 47	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People. Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 74 . 75 . 75 . 76
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 44 45 46 47 48	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People. Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring Resident Institutes.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 74 . 75 . 75 . 76 . 76
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 44 45 46 47 48 49	Showing limits to a resource Enlightening hard to see connections. Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity . Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People. Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring Resident Institutes. Internationally funded programs	. 68 68 70 71 72 72 72 73 73 73 74 74 74 74 75 75 75 76 76 76
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections. Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts)	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 75 . 75 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People. Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring Resident Institutes. Internationally funded programs Fragmentation How much information is enough?	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 75 . 75 . 75 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 77
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring Resident Institutes. Internationally funded programs Fragmentation How much information is enough? Chapter 8. Mobilizing Sustainable Funding.	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 74 . 74 . 74 . 74 . 74 . 75 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 77 . 79
33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51	Showing limits to a resource. Enlightening hard to see connections Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts) A Note on Modeling. "Non-use" of Science. Value of Monitoring. To assess baseline conditions. To assess baseline conditions. To assess effects of a policy. What to monitor. A Note on Serendipity Sharing Information Use of Indicators Museums and Information Centers Involving People. Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring Resident Institutes. Internationally funded programs Fragmentation How much information is enough?	. 68 . 68 . 70 . 71 . 72 . 72 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 73 . 74 . 75 . 75 . 75 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 76 . 77 . 77

1 2	User Fees Pollution Charges	
3	An independent source of funding?	
4	The Principle of Cross-subsidization	
5	Should people pay for "gifts of nature/basic human rights"?	
6	The special case of the "poorest of the poor"	
7	National Funding	
, 8	External Funding	
9	The Special Case of the Global Environmental Facility (GEF)	
7 10	External funding—necessary? sufficient?	
11 12	The Sustainability of External Funding, or, is there life after external funding?? Practical Steps towards Securing Additional Funding	
13	Section III. Synthesis	91
14	Chapter 9. Plans to Action: Integration of Planning Dimensions	93
15	Lake Basin Planning	93
16	A Framework for Analyzing Lake Basin Planning	96
17	Integration of Management Interventions over Time and Space	
18	Integration by Encompassing	
19	Integration by Unification	
20	Integration by Broadening	
21	Integration Lessons	
22	Integration should first take place where the pressures are greatest	
23	Integration should be phased over time	
24	Integration should be pursued by necessity rather than integration by design	
25	Adaptive Management Planning	
26	Planning for Sustainable Lake Basin Management Institutions	
27	Planning for Lake Basin Governance	
28	Chapter 10: Towards the Future	
29	Reassessing Existing Lake Basin Management Programs	109
29 30	Reassessing Existing Lake Basin Management Programs	
30	Dealing With Roadblocks	110
	Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance	110 112
30 31	Dealing With Roadblocks	110 112 112
30 31 32	Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships	110 112 112 112 112
30 31 32 33	Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base	110 112 112 112 112 . 113
30 31 32 33 34	Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV)	110 112 112 112 112 113 113
30 31 32 33 34 35	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) 	110 112 112 112 112 113 113 114
30 31 32 33 34 35 36	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied 	110 112 112 112 113 113 114 115
30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution 	110 112 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 114 115 116
30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis 	110 112 112 112 . 113 113 114 115 116 . 121
30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. 	110 112 112 112 . 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121
30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis 	110 112 112 112 113 113 114 115 116 121 121 121
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. 	110 112 112 112 . 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. Objectives and Outcomes. Lake Selection and Characteristics. 	110 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. Objectives and Outcomes Lake Selection and Characteristics. Lake Briefs, Thematic Papers and Regional Workshops 	110 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. Objectives and Outcomes. Lake Selection and Characteristics. Lake Briefs, Thematic Papers and Regional Workshops Website Clearinghouse and e-Forum 	110 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123 123 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 	 Dealing With Roadblocks	110 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123 123 123 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. Objectives and Outcomes Lake Selection and Characteristics. Lake Briefs, Thematic Papers and Regional Workshops Website Clearinghouse and e-Forum Steering Committee Working Group Meetings 	110 112 112 . 112 . 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123 123 123 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 	 Dealing With Roadblocks	110 112 112 112 . 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 122 123 123 123 123 123 123
 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 	 Dealing With Roadblocks From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV) The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV) A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied A Note of Caution Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis Appendix B: Project Details Key Organizations Involved in this Project. Objectives and Outcomes Lake Selection and Characteristics Lake Briefs, Thematic Papers and Regional Workshops Website Clearinghouse and e-Forum Steering Committee Working Group Meetings 	110 112 112 112 113 113 113 114 115 116 . 121 121 123 123 123 123 123 123 124 . 125

1	References	127
2	Glossary	129
3		

1 Foreword

2 3 Lakes and reservoirs are vital to the economic development process. They contain about 4 90 percent of the earth's surface storage of liquid freshwater; are critical elements of the 5 earth's hydrological system; form vital ecosystems for aquatic biodiversity; and provide livelihood and social, economic and aesthetic benefits that are essential for improving the 6 7 quality of life of the basin communities. Yet they have not received sufficient attention in the global water policy discourse. Increasingly, human activities are profoundly impacting 8 9 their ecological integrity. Lakes are closed systems with relatively long retention times, which can trap pollutants for extended periods. They have complex dynamics and 10 characteristics, and are particularly vulnerable to a range of anthropogenic stresses. The 11 science of limnology has improved considerably in the past few decades, but our 12 13 knowledge of how to effectively use science to inform public policy and the management of lakes remains limited. To address the knowledge gap, the World Bank partnered with 14 the GEF, UNDP, UNEP, Ramsar Bureau, USAID, BNWPP, Shiga Prefecture, ILEC, LakeNet, 15 16 and lake stakeholders to implement a cooperative project to review lessons from the 17 experience of lake basin management at 28 lake basins around the world. Appendix B summarizes the project's objectives, methodology, and implementation arrangements. 18 19 This report is a key output of the project. 20

- This report builds on the World Lake Vision presented at the Third World Water Forum, which highlighted key principles of lake basin management, and the recommendation of the World Bank to develop a Lake Basin Management Initiative (see Ayres et al 1996). It also supports the implementation of the World Bank's Environment Strategy and Water Resources Sector Strategy. It is also an important contribution to practical approaches to sustainable lake basin management, supporting the Millennium Development Goals (MDG) on sustainable water resources management.
- 28

29 The project has produced four major benefits. First, it has focused on practical lessons learned from lake basin management efforts around the world. Although much 30 work has been done to share scientific and technical experiences on lakes—as evidenced 31 by the number of international, government, and academic conferences and 32 33 publications—less attention has been devoted to analyzing the effectiveness of 34 alternative management approaches, including the policy, institutional, economic, and social dimensions of lake management. A strong scientific knowledge base is critical to 35 sustainable management, but little has been done to draw practical lessons from the 36 37 implementation of water and environmental policies and institutional reforms, or from involving people in lake basin management programs around the world. This report 38 directly addresses this gap and should help strengthen the human capacity for improved 39 40 lake and reservoir basin management at the local, basin, national, and global levels. 41 42 Second, the project has *created new knowledge*. It supported the preparation of lake

43 briefs focusing on experiences and lessons learned for 28 lakes from East, Central, and 44 South Asia; Eastern and Western Europe; Eastern, Central, and Southern Africa; and 45 North, Central, and South America. In addition, the project produced 17 thematic papers on specific lake management issues. Additionally, knowledge was generated and shared 46 47 by more than 200 lake stakeholders and participants at the three regional workshops held in Burlington, Vermont, USA in June 2003; in Manila, Philippines in September 2003; 48 49 and in Nairobi, Kenya in November 2003. Knowledge creation and sharing was also 50 supported by a project-implemented electronic forum that linked global stakeholders in the review of the lake briefs, thematic papers, and this final report. 51 52

Third, the project fills an important gap in lake management experiences on *tropical lakes, saline lakes, and lakes in developing countries*. A temperate zone bias was
avoided by the inclusion of many lakes from tropical, arid, and semi-arid regions. Further,
the project included a particular focus on lakes from developing countries where lessons

1 have not yet been adequately synthesized or disseminated. Saline lakes are also included 2 in the project.

3

4 Finally, the report derives lake management lessons from internationally funded

5 projects, principally Global Environment Facility (GEF)-financed lake basin projects, as

6 well as lake projects financed by the World Bank and other agencies and governments.

Over the last decade, the GEF has provided the most significant financial support for lake 7

8 basin management projects through its three implementing agencies (World Bank, UNDP, 9 UNEP). The experience gained from the national and international lake projects reviewed

10 in this report has provided a wealth of new information from lake environments that have

- 11 not been studied well. The GEF has recognized that analysis and dissemination of past
- 12 lake basin management experiences will guide ongoing and future programs on these
- 13 lakes, as well as in other lakes and reservoirs.
- 14

15 At the broadest level, the report's intended audience includes communities, technical staff and policymakers working on lake basin management, particularly the staff from 16

- government and nongovernmental agencies, research and policy institutions, and funding 17
- 18 agencies. The report will be most useful to decision makers. This report also provides
- guidance for the GEF, the World Bank, and other GEF implementing agencies such as 19
- 20 UNDP and UNEP for current and future lake basin management programs.
- 21 22

1 Acknowledgements

2 3 This Main Report is a key output of the GEF Medium Size Project—Towards a Lake Basin 4 Management Initiative: Sharing Experiences and Lessons from GEF and Non GEF Lake 5 Basin Management Projects. The project was implemented by the World Bank and executed by the International Lake Environment Committee (ILEC), with support from 6 7 LakeNet, between March 2003 and December 2004. The project was implemented as a cooperative program supported by a partnership of multilateral and bilateral agencies, 8 9 local governments, non-governmental organizations, academic and research institutions, individuals, and # resource persons and # stakeholders from 28 lake basins from Africa, 10 Asia, Europe, and Americas. Project implementation was supported by funds from the 11 GEF, USAID, and the government of Shiga Prefecture in Japan, the Bank Netherlands 12 13 Water Partnership Program, ILEC and the World Bank.

14

Project Implementation was led by Rafik Hirji of the World Bank and managed by
Masahisa Nakamura of ILEC. An international project Steering Committee consisting of
representatives from various organizations including Stephen Lintner, Chair (The World
Bank), Barbara Best (USAID), Peter Bridgewater (Ramsar Convention), Alfred Duda
(GEF), Sean Khan (UNEP) and Dann Sklarew (UNDP) provided overall guidance to project
implementation, and the preparation of the main report.

21

The ILEC and Lakenet Project Management Team and Secretariat also included Hiroya Kotani, Genjiro Furukawa, Thomas Ballatore, Victor Muhandiki, Chiharu Uyama, and TBD from ILEC, and David Barker, Lisa Borre and TBD from LakeNet. Richard Davis, Kisa Mfalila, Sharon Esumei, Diane Flex, Robin Broadfield, Siree Malaise and Samson Kaber

26 from the World Bank supported data collection and project administration.

27

The 28 lake basin management briefs and 17 thematic papers on specialized topics 28 29 related to lake basin management formed other substantive outputs of the project. The papers and the authors are listed in Appendix C and provided on the attached CD-ROM. 30 Additionally, Appendix D lists over 200 key stakeholders who reviewed the draft lake 31 briefs and thematic papers at three regional workshops for 12 lakes from Americas, 32 33 Europe and Central Asia held in Vermont, USA (June 2003), 8 lakes from East and South 34 Asia held in Manila, Philippines (September 2003) and 8 lakes from Eastern, Southern and Central Africa held in Nairobi, Kenya (November 2003). These workshops were 35 organized with support from St. Michaels College in Burlington, Vermont, Laguna de Bay 36 37 Lake Development Authority in Manila, Philippines, and Pan-African START Secretariat in Nairobi, Kenya. Regional co-ordination of the Lake Briefs was provided by Thomas 38 39 Ballatore of ILEC (Asian Lake Briefs), David Barker of LakeNet (North American, South 40 American and European Lake Briefs) and Victor Muhandiki of ILEC (African Lake Briefs). 41 Draft and final lake briefs and thematic papers and the main report were posted on the 42 project supported electronic forum for public comment. The final draft briefs for the 14 43 GEF supported lake basin management programs were also reviewed by the respective 44 implementing agency task managers. 45

The Main Report was prepared by a team, led by Masahisa Nakamura who served as 46 47 Senior Editor/Report Editor, and was composed of Thomas Ballatore, David Barker, Lisa Borre, John Dixon, Walter Garvey, Victor Muhandiki, Masahisa Nakamura, James Nickum, 48 49 and Walter Rast. While working together as a team, each chapter had one or more lead 50 authors as follows: Chapter 1 (Biophysical Characteristics) Ballatore and Muhandiki; Chapter 2 (Human Use of Lakes) Nakamura and Davis; Chapter 3 (Institutions) Nickum 51 and Nakamura; Chapter 4 (Policy) Dixon; Chapter 5 (People) LakeNet; Chapter 6 52 53 (Infrastructure) Ballatore, Chapter 7 (Role of Information) Rast and Ballatore; Chapter 8 54 (Financing) Dixon; Chapter 9 (Planning) Nakamura, Davis and Garvey; and Chapter 10 (Towards the Future) Garvey and Nakamura. Appendix A on Economics was prepared by 55 56 Dixon. Walter Rast and Richard Davis were the technical co-editors of the Report. 57

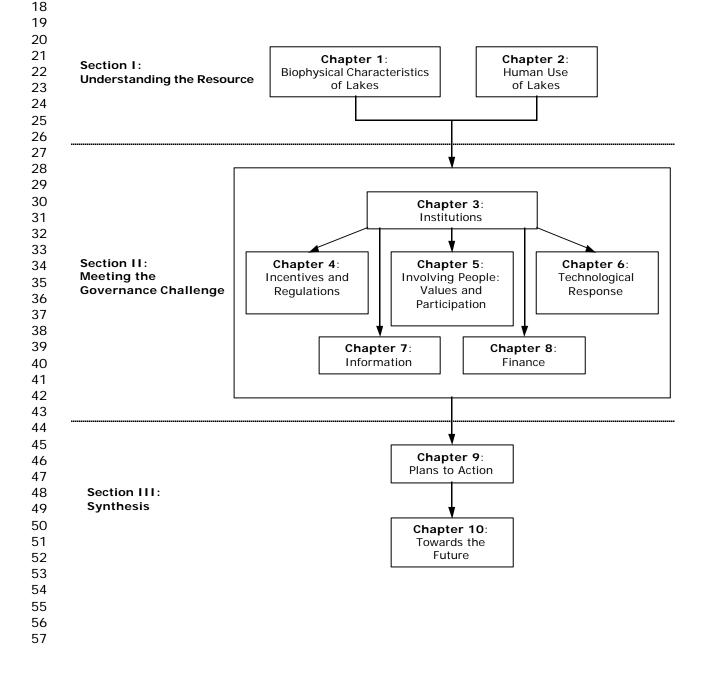
- Many others also contributed: TBD for preparation of maps; TBD for editing of the Lake
 Briefs; TBD for Desk Top Publishing; TBD for production of the CD containing the Lake
 Briefs and Thematic Papers. Add other acknowledgments as appropriate.
- 4

5 Preparation of the Main Report was supported by a series of Working Group Meetings of 6 the core team members and other lake basin stakeholders including Oyugi Aseto, Adelina

- 7 Santos-Borja, Eric Odada, Sonia Davila-Poblete and Sven Erik Jorgensen.
- 8
- 9 Michael Glantz from the National Center for Atmospheric Research and Nick Davidson
 10 from the Ramsar Bureau peer reviewed the final report.
- 11
- 12 The Project Managers are very grateful to the funding agencies, steering committee
- members, and all contributors including consultants, authors, reviewers, workshop
- 14 organizers and participants, and other supporters of the project and its outputs.
- 15

1 Structure of the Report

2 3 The report is organized in ten chapters under three sections. Section I includes two 4 chapters that provide the background for understanding the challenges facing lakes, and 5 their potential values and uses as a key resource for sustainable livelihoods and development around the world, as well as for maintaining important life-supporting 6 7 ecosystems. Section II, with six chapters, forms the core of the report. It presents the 8 key lessons learned on the main themes of lake management from the 28 case studies 9 and 17 thematic papers: institutions, incentives and regulations, involving people, 10 technology, information, and financing. Section III, with the final two chapters, is a 11 synthesis of the report. The chapter on planning brings all the themes of Section II 12 together and discusses how lake basin management is carried out in practice. The final 13 chapter presents guidelines for taking action to improve the conditions of a lake and the 14 people and nature that both depend on it. 15 16 17



Section I. Understanding the Resource

This section is comprised of two parallel chapters: the former (Chapter 1) discusses biophysical aspects of lakes and the latter (Chapter 2) looks at how lakes are used and how those uses have typically been developed and governed. Both chapters are written with a prototypical lake in mind and we hope that the story told will resonate with people everywhere. Taken together, these two chapters provide the background necessary to understand the challenges facing lakes, and their potential values and uses, as a key resource for promoting sustainable human livelihoods and development around the world, as well as for maintaining important life-supporting ecosystems.

Chapter 1: Biophysical Characteristics of Lakes 1 2

3 **Extent and Global Distribution of Lakes** 4

5 Lakes are widespread and plentiful: considered collectively they contain more than 90% of the available liquid freshwater on the earth's surface (Shiklomanov 1993). Although 6 7 there is no definitive count, there are at least several million lakes on the planet. Most are small and often located in remote areas. Several hundred lakes are over 500 km³ in 8 9 surface area, however, making them major features of the global landscape.

10

11 Lakes are found on all continents of the world, even on Antarctica, which is home to 12 many saline surface lakes, and even some lakes buried under kilometers of ice (e.g., 13 Lake Vostok). The distribution of lakes is governed primarily by variations in geology and 14 climate: geology in the sense that the land surface must contain a depression capable of 15 storing water; climate in the sense that there must be a balance between the amount of 16 inputs (precipitation) and outputs (evaporation, leakage to groundwater, outflowing rivers) for the water to accumulate to large volumes. Where these two factor come 17 together most clearly, such as in the glacial deposit areas of North America and Europe, 18 19 lakes are hyper-abundant. Humans also construct artificial lakes by damming flowing 20 rivers. These reservoirs and impoundments are most often built in regions of the world 21 that lack substantial numbers of natural lakes, and are used primarily to address recurring problems of water shortages (drought) or excesses (floods). 22 23 24 Lakes and Their Basins 25

Because of their unique properties, lakes occupy a significant niche in the global 26 hydrologic cycle, the means by which nature supplies water throughout our planet. A lake 27 is first and foremost a natural ecosystem, containing a large volume of water, and a 28 29 mixture of interacting living and non-living components. In fact, there is no way to separate the influences of either component on the other. 30

31

32 A complete lake system, however, consists both of the depression in the land surface that 33 contains the water (the lake itself), as well as the land surface (drainage basin; see Box 34 1.1 on terminology) which surrounds the lake. Although water can also enter a lake from underground sources (groundwater flow), the major water inputs are usually from 35 surface inflows (i.e. rivers, streams) and direct precipitation. The water entering a lake 36 37 from its drainage basin picks up and carries materials from the land to the lake, making lakes good reflections of land-use and other human activities in their catchments. 38

39

40 The concept of the linkage between a lake and its surrounding drainage basin is of 41 fundamental importance in lake management. Problems with lakes can originate within 42 the lake itself (such as over-fishing), be transmitted to the lake from its upstream 43 drainage basin (such as agri-chemicals from irrigation areas), or in a few cases come 44 from outside the drainage basin (such as acid rain). Use of the lake's resources can also 45 impact on downstream communities. Thus, recognition of this fundamental interrelation between the lake and its upstream and downstream drainage basin is an essential part of 46 47 effective lake management efforts. In this document, we will discuss the management of 48 the lake and its resources and so will focus on the lake and its upstream drainage basin, 49 as articulated in Principle 2 of the World Lake Vision (World Lake Vision Committee, 50 2003): 51

52 53 54

"A lake drainage basin is the logical starting point for planning and management actions for sustainable lake use."

55 A further discussion on drainage basins, as well as an illustration of common types, is 56 illustrated in Boxes 1.1 and 1.2.

Box 1.1. Watershed, Catchment, or Basin?

Water somehow gets into a lake. In some cases, like Lake Victoria—a large, relatively shallow great lake—most of the water enters as direct precipitation. For most lakes, however, the large majority of water enters as precipitation runoff from surrounding land. For decision makers, what is happening on that surrounding land is tremendously important because it has profound effects on the lake itself. Therefore, it is widely recognized today that lake management cannot stop at the lakeshore but must extend to the surrounding land, and even beyond in cases where atmospheric transport is important.

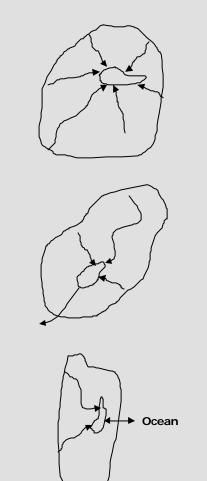
The problem is finding a common term for that surrounding land. Nowadays, several terms are used almost interchangeably. The first is "catchment". The meaning is intuitive—the catchment is the area around a lake that "catches" precipitation, which then drains to the lake (noting of course evaporation, evapotranspiration, seepage to groundwater, etc. that occur along the way). A similar term is "drainage basin", which maintains the intuitive flavor of "catchment"—namely, it is the area from which water "drains" to the lake. "Watershed" used to mean the boundary between two catchments (or drainage basins!) but has become synonymous with the catchment itself, not just the infinitely thin dividing line around the edge of the catchment. "Basin" literally is like a wash basin—the area covered only by water—in this case, the lake itself. However, this use of the term is not common among policy makers and "basin" too has come to be simple shorthand for "drainage basin". Finally, "lake basin" is a drainage basin with a lake in it. Naturally there are catchments, drainage basins anc watershed without lakes in them; lake basins must have a lake to live up to their name!

This may seem quite confusing, but is actually simple—all the terms really mean the same thing—the land surrounding a lake. In this report, we try to use "drainage basin" but all the terms are inevitably used at different places in this report and in the lake briefs and thematic papers.

Box 1.2. Common Types of Drainage Basins

1

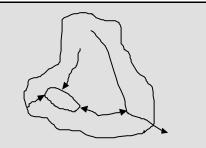
There are a wide variety of drainage basins types—each with profound effects for lake management and use. Some of the more common types are illustrated below.



Closed Drainage Basin (endorheic basin)—A closed basin with no water outlet (river, stream). Water leaves the lake only through evaporation or seepage to groundwater. This high rate of evaporation generally leads to higher salinity (total ionic concentration) in a lake. Thus, most lakes in closed basins are either saline (total ionic concentration >3 g/L) or are becoming so. Examples of closed basin lakes include the Aral Sea, and Lakes Chad and Issyk-Kul.

Open Drainage Basin (exorheic basin)—An open basin with a water outlet(s). Water leaves the lake by one or more rivers, allowing ions (components of salinity) to be flushed. Thus, the water remains "fresh" (i.e., low salinity—drinkable). Most lakes in this report are in open drainage basins. Examples are Lakes Champlain, Constance and Dianchi.

Coastal Drainage Basin—A drainage basin with flows to and from the ocean. Fresh water typically enters the lake through rivers draining to it. The lake sometimes drains (via a river) to the ocean; sometimes the ocean drains to the lake. This can lead to complex salinity relationships. Examples include Lake Chilika and, to a lesser extent, Laguna de Bay.



Mixed Flow Drainage Basin—A drainage basin with flows that reverses depending on the season. In contrast to a coastal lake, the flows typically come from a freshwater river. This reversal of flow leads to large fluctuations in lake water level and area. Tonle Sap is an example of this type of lake. In this case, the size of the lake's drainage basin is seasonal, since the connecting river inflow is seasonal.

Characteristics of Lakes

The fact that the word "lake" is applied to such diverse waterbodies as Lake Baikal (1,637 m deep, 31,500 km² of surface area, and 25 million years old) and Lake Baringo (2.5 m, 108 km² of surface area, and a few thousand years old) indicates that, in spite of the tremendous diversity of lakes around the world, they share some common characteristics. These characteristics are examined below with the implications for management noted.

10 Long Retention Time

11

1 2

3

Rivers flow—lakes don't. Specifically stated, rivers are lotic (flowing water) whereas lakes 12 are lentic (standing water). Of course, that is an over-simplification-lakes have outlets 13 14 and their water is flushed, but the period of flushing is guite long, reaching over 15 hundreds of years for some lakes. This flushing period is called the retention time (or hydraulic residence time) and is equal to the volume divided by the outflow. For most 16 lakes, the volume is so massive it dwarfs the flow, leading to long residence times. For 17 18 example, Lake Malawi contains around 18,400 cubic *kilometers* (km³) of water, but the 19 flow out of the lake (through rivers and evaporation) is just 66 km³ per year. With that much water, Lake Malawi, like most other lakes, is a permanent feature of the landscape 20 21 on the human-time scale.

22

23 Long retention time has several important implications. One is that lakes are relatively 24 stable. Even in severe droughts, lakes still have some water in them: their large volumes 25 mask short-term variations. There are exceptions of course, usually of lakes in closed 26 basins like the Aral Sea, which is known to have dried up 3 times in the last 2 millennia. Nevertheless, most lakes hold and can absorb large amounts of water, buffering both 27 28 floods and droughts. Acting as a "pool" of water, they present a flat surface allowing for 29 easy navigation. Additionally, long-retention time implies a slow rate of flow which allows 30 for more time (than in a river for example) for suspended materials to settle to the 31 bottom-this means that lakes act as sinks for many materials. Also, by simply being 32 around for a long time, they foster civilizations and can become symbols of a culture (like 33 rivers, of course).

34

35 Another implication is that long-term stability coupled with relative "isolation" provides sufficient conditions for complex ecosystems to evolve in lakes. Just as islands can be 36 37 viewed as "islands of land in an ocean of water," lakes can be characterized as "islands of 38 water in an ocean of land." Both situations represent isolated ecosystems within which 39 area-unique biological communities can develop and evolve. Lake Malawi provides an 40 example of what millions of years of relative isolation, coupled with natural selection, can 41 accomplish—over 500 endemic (native) fish species exist in this lake. However, this 42 biodiversity can be rapidly destroyed, as demonstrated by the major loss of fish 43 community structure in Lake Victoria. This illustrates the important point that lake 44 ecosystems are very resilient when faced with stresses that have existed over 45 evolutionary-time scales but they are extremely vulnerable to "new" stresses (usually 46 anthropogenic) that the ecosystem has never faced before.

1 Finally, and most importantly for management, once a lake is degraded, it takes a very 2 long time-if ever-to put things right. The implication is that before a decision is taken 3 that adversely affects a lake, one must be really sure that is a wise course to take 4 because turning back the clock is very hard, very costly, and often, just plain impossible. 5 The loss of fish species in Lake Victoria is a clear example; the long-term release of toxic 6 chemicals from sediment is another. Thus, the long retention time of lakes leads to lags 7 in response that makes them poorly matched to the human management timescale.

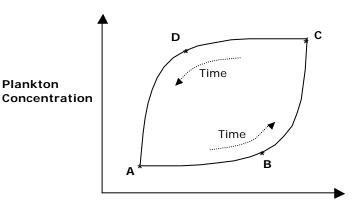
- 9
- 10

Complex Dynamics

8

11 In addition to long retention time, lakes are complex systems: what you put into a lake is 12 not necessarily what you get out. And what you get out depends on how much was put 13 in, when, and in what order. This complex response is termed "hysteresis" and is

- 14 illustrated in Figure 1.1.
- 15
- 16



Nutrient Concentration



Figure 1.1. An example of complex dynamics of a lake.

19 Imagine a relatively pristine (oligotrophic) shallow lake lying at point A in Figure 1.1. 20 Nutrient concentration is quite low, so the concentration of plankton living in the lake (an indicator of trophic state) is also low-there is not enough food to go around. As human 21 22 population around the lake grows and as incomes increase, nutrient loading to the lake (and therefore concentration in the lake) inevitably increases, but the plankton 23 24 concentration increases only slightly (to point B), reflecting the ecosystem's natural capacity to absorb external influences and neutralize them. Then, with only a slight 25 additional increase in loading, the lake ecosystem changes dramatically, with a sudden 26 increase in plankton density-often exhibited as an algal bloom (point C). The algal 27 28 bloom is an easy-to-see sign that something is going wrong in the lake and that uses are being impaired; consequently, local people call on politicians to implement policies to 29 decrease nutrient loading. 30 31

Reducing the nutrient load requires changes in human behavior-that requires political 32 33 will-and like most things political, it only lasts until the next election. The difficulty for a decision maker is that the lake cannot simply go from C back to B. There are likely to 34 have been irreversible changes to the ecosystem (in this case, phytoplankton have 35 replaced macrophytes as the dominant species), so the path is usually from C to 36 something like D. That means sacrifice over a long period without much to show for it, 37 38 i.e. plankton concentrations are still high; blooms are still occurring. That is a tough road for a decision-maker to walk. Chapter 7 talks about the role of information and illustrates 39 40 how science can be used to find where a lake lies on the graph (between A and D). 41 Science can also offer shorter paths from C back to A through things like biomanipulation 42 and in-lake restoration methods.

1 The complex nature of lake ecosystems also gives rise to various indirect effects such as 2 biomagnification. Biomagnification refers to the increase in concentration 2 ("magnification") of cortain comparisons ("bio") as one goes up the food

3 ("magnification") of certain compounds in organisms ("bio") as one goes up the food

4 chain (i.e., as organisms at lower positions in the food chain are eaten by organisms at

5 higher positions in the chain). Compounds such as PCBs and dioxins are extremely

soluble in fat (lipophilic) and therefore remain in the bodies of organisms that consume
them. Those organisms may get eaten, indirectly transferring the lipophilic compound to

8 the predator. The Laurentian Great Lakes provide a good example of this phenomenon

9 (See Table 1.1). As shown in the table, the concentration of PCBs increases up the food

10 chain. This implies that organisms higher up the food chain (including humans) are

- 11 exposed to higher concentrations and therefore are at higher risk.
- 12 13

Table 1.1. Biomagnification of PCBs in the Laurentian Great Lakes

Organism	PCB concentration (relative to conc. in phytoplankton)	
Humans	?	
Herring Gull Eggs	4960	
Lake Trout (a large fish)	193	
Smelt (a small fish)	47	
Zooplankton	5	
Phytoplankton	1	
(Adapted from USEP	A and Government of Canada, 1995)	

14 15

20

22

16 Note that for a decision maker and any one eating Lake Trout (or Herring Gull Eggs!),

17 this is a real problem. It is ironic that while the lake's complex food chain makes

18 existence of valuable fish like the Lake Trout possible, the same complexity leads to

19 indirect effects like biomagnification that may make the fish dangerous to eat.

21 Transmissivity

Lakes integrate; they are the mixing pots of nature. They receive inputs from their
catchments (and beyond), mix the inputs together, transform them and spread them out
again. Additionally, fish, water and even pollution are able to move around more or less
freely in all directions. This property—transmissivity—is the third key characteristic of
lakes.

28

29 One important implication of transmissivity is that a problem at a lake is shared by most 30 users. Rivers provide a simple counter-example: pollution at one point in a river 31 immediately flows downstream, often leading to a disconnection between those causing 32 the pollution and those affected by it. This can result in upstream-downstream conflict. The transmissive nature of lakes means that one user's effect on another is spatially 33 34 spread out and shared, including by the original user. This is very similar to global 35 warming: the effects of one person's emission of greenhouse gases are felt by all, 36 including the emitter.

37

Another implication of transmissivity is that most uses of lakes (see Chapter 2 for a full description) are non-excludable; that is, it is costly to exclude users from accessing a given lake resource. As Box 1.3 describes, when access to resources is costly to control, open access is the default regime. This is not desirable because open access, combined with human nature, invariably leads to overuse and destruction of the resource base. It is important to note that this physical property of lakes—transmissivity—profoundly affects a social issue—how the use of lake resources is managed.

45

Overall, these three defining characteristics—long retention time, complex dynamics, and
transmissivity—when taken together, make lakes what they are: beautiful, valuable,
complex, but also vulnerable and difficult to manage. Lessons learned on how societies
govern resource use—how they control access to various lake resources—is the
remainder of this report.

Box 1.3. Some "common" terms and their meaning: common-pool resources, common property and the commons.

Most readers have likely heard of the "tragedy of the commons", an idea made popular by a 1968 article ir *Science* by Garrett Hardin. This article captured the spirit of the times and has gone on to trigger a massive research effort on environmental management. The problem is that the term "commons" used by Hardin was misleading because it is often assumed to refer to common property; however, Hardin's main point was that **open access** to resources usually leads to overexploitation, something shown clearly in the lake briefs. Tc avoid confusion, we define below some terms used in this report.

Common-pool resources are resources for which one person's use takes away from another's use and for which it is hard to exclude other users. The table below compares common-pool resources against other types of resource by examining two characteristics: rivalry and excludability. Rivalry (also sometimes called subtractability) means that one person's use of a resource subtracts from the amount available to other users (e.g. someone catching fish reduces the amount someone else can catch—at least over the short-term). For non-rival goods, one person's use does *not* affect another's (e.g. everyone can enjoy the climate-moderating or aesthetic benefits derived from a lake). Excludability refers to the cost of controlling someone's access to a resource. Non-excludable goods have a positive cost for restricting access.

	Excludable	Non-excludable	
Rival	Private good	Common pool resource	
Non-rival	Club good	Public good	

Many of the resources provided by lakes are common-pool; good examples are fishing, water extraction, and the use of the lake as a sink for pollutants. Some uses like flood control are public goods. For almost all uses, it is costly (but socially desirable) to exclude users.

Access to a given resource of a lake can either be open (open access) or closed (private, common, or government property). **Common property** is a type of institution that gives the rights of use of a resource to a defined group. That group usually has rules specifying how the group's members can use the resource. Lake Naivasha is an excellent case of a riparian group (Lake Naivasha Riparian Association) using the lake as common property. Private property and government (public) property are also widespread ways that societies have developed to control access to "open access" resources.

The stand-alone term **"commons"** is often used as short hand for either common-pool resources or for common property, often leading to confusion about what is being discussed (i.e. the nature of the resource or the type of property regime governing its use?). Some may think of the "commons" as a shared, public resource often with no control over access.

Overall, it is important to clearly distinguish between the characteristics of a resource and the characteristics of the management regime governing use of the resource. Also, one must note that a lake may provide various resources, each with different characteristics, but many sharing a common-pool or public good nature. Therefore, it is misleading to speak of a lake, as a whole, as a common-pool resource: it is clearer to specify which use of the lake is being referred to.

3 4

Chapter 2. Human Use of Lakes

A Lake; its Development and Management

The Story of a Lake

6 7 People settled around the lake shore many millennia ago. While the population was low, the resources that it offered were abundant and there was little conflict between different 8 9 settlements over use of these resources. The fish caught by one community did not seriously impair the ability of another community to obtain fish; the water drawn for 10 domestic use did not noticeably lower the lake level. But, as the lake's population 11 increased, some of these resources came under pressure. This happened first with the 12 13 fish. Following some years of low rainfall, fish catches began to decline and those fish that were caught were smaller than before. The more experienced fishermen realized 14 15 that this was because the wetlands were not being flooded and the fish could not breed successfully. Conflicts started to break out between different communities about access 16 17 to the best fishing grounds. Fortunately, the rains returned before these conflicts became unmanageable, the breeding grounds became available and the fish populations 18 19 recovered.

20

1 2 3

4 5

Nevertheless, the incident caused the leaders of the fishing communities to agree on some rules of access to fishing grounds that would reduce tensions. Each community had the right to send only a specific number of boats to these areas. Also the wetlands were agreed to be off limit during the period when they were flooded and the fish were spawning. Any transgressors would be judged by an assembly of the leaders of the lakeshore communities with those found guilty being banned from fishing and even expelled from their community.

28

29 A more difficult problem arose many years later with the influx of a group of farming families into the catchment feeding into the lake. As they prospered and grew, these 30 families cleared increasing areas of land. The land began to erode during the wet season 31 and the wetlands at the entrance to the lake began to silt up. Again fish breeding was 32 33 interrupted and fish numbers began to decline. However, the farmers did not accept the 34 claims of the fishing communities that they were causing the siltation of the wetlands. They believed that the rivers were always silty during the wet season and that the 35 decline in fish catch was nothing to do with them. Although this caused bad blood 36 37 between the farmers and fisherfolk, it did not lead to violence because other fish breeding grounds were still operating and the fisherfolk were able to compensate by 38 39 moving further offshore, and building fish traps and fish ponds. Nevertheless, a distance 40 developed between the two groups that was never bridged and to a large extent they led 41 separate lives.

42

43 Over time, the lakeshore communities expanded into towns. The town people, while not 44 relying directly on fishing for their incomes, continued to identify with the lake. They 45 were proud of its scenery, enjoyed its waters for recreation and used it for easy transport of their goods to other destinations. They also used it to dispose of their wastes. Rubbish 46 47 was dumped in creeks to be eventually flushed into the lake. To keep up with the amenity offered by other towns throughout the country, the local council installed 48 49 sewage removal and primary treatment of the effluent to remove the worst of the 50 organic matter. The resulting effluent was then disposed of in the lake at a convenient 51 distance from the town.

52

A major expansion of the region occurred many years later when the national
government decided to develop a large irrigated cotton growing area upstream of the
lake to take advantage of increasing European demand for cotton. The development was
widely welcomed by the region's business interests (they had lobbied strongly for it), and
the town councils were briefed on the plan and endorsed it. Of course, the land had to be

1 expropriated from the farmers who had settled there many generations earlier but, in 2 compliance with national laws, the government intended to provide them with alternative 3 agricultural land some days travel away. Many of the town people and the fisherfolk were uneasy about this development but had no means of finding out much about it, let alone 4 5 influencing it. They felt little solidarity with the farming communities and actually felt quite relieved when the irrigation area went ahead. New, wealthier farmers appeared and 6 7 the old groups were moved away.

8

9 At first the new irrigation area appeared to cause no problem. The region prospered with 10 the additional income and the towns grew rapidly to provide necessary services. A 11 government agriculture office was opened in the major town and many new people

12 arrived to take advantage of the employment opportunities in the irrigation area.

13

14 However, after some decades problems started to appear in the lake. Dense mats of 15 weeds began to grow around the mouths of the town creeks and spread into the boat harbours. Waterweeds even began to appear near the fish pens. Since the region had 16 long ceased to be dependent on the fishing industry, this was seen more as a nuisance 17 18 than a major problem by many people. In fact, some entrepreneurial women harvested 19 the weeds to use for weaving. More alarmingly to most people, the water near the towns 20 quite quickly and unexpectedly turned dirty and had a musty smell. Many of the 21 townspeople, particularly the older residents who remembered the beauty of the lake 22 when they were younger, were seriously upset and complained to the town council. The fishermen were also worried, but for a different reason. They had trouble launching their 23 24 boats through the weeds and they had trouble selling their fish because of the

widespread perception that the fish were dirty and tasted bad. 25

26

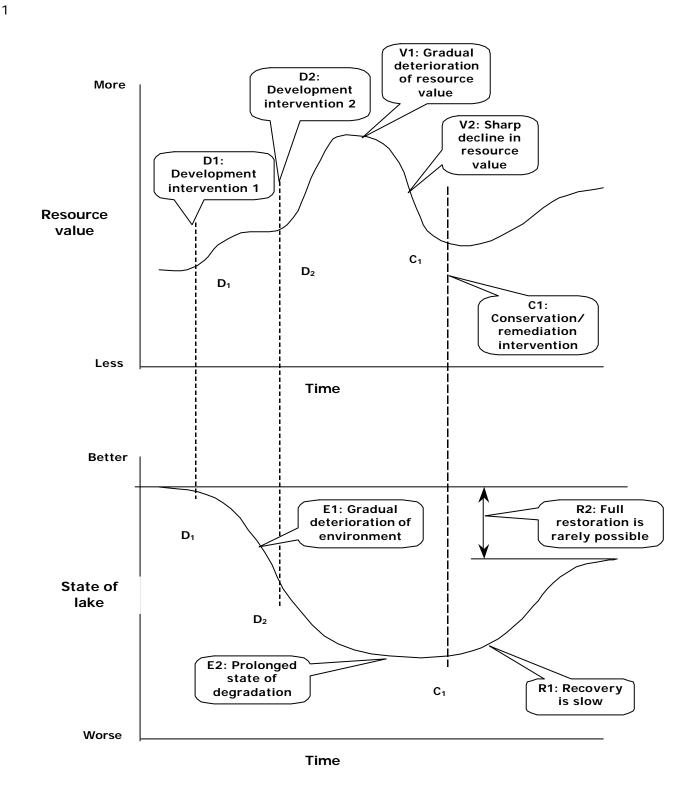
27 There was a strong local opinion that the problem was caused by the upstream irrigators 28 although the government officials in the Agricultural office claimed that it was nothing to 29 do with their industry and that the problem resulted from the expansion of the towns. 30 Under pressure, the government promised to upgrade the sewage treatment plant for the 31 town to remove nutrients from the sewage since this could be completed within three 32 years. They also promised to launch a scientific investigation into the causes of the 33 problem.

34

43

- 35 Commentary 36
- 37 This story, while only a microcosm of all that can occur in lakes, illustrates many important features of lakes and their management. It shows that: 38
- At the broadest level, lakes provide a variety of uses or values to people and 39 40 these values change over time, from initial subsistence values through to later 41 aesthetic and cultural values;
- 42 There are potential limitations on the use of these resources as the demand for them increases—this can appear as simple over-exploitation of fish, or as a more subtle overuse of the lake's capacity to absorb wastes;
- 45 Competition for these resources intensifies and authorities—sometimes local 46 leadership groups, sometimes more distant governments-intervene to resolve conflicts: 47
- 48 Rules of behavior are discussed and agreed, and structures (councils, government departments) are established to administer and apply these rules; 49
- Uncertainty is central to management; unpredictable natural variations in rainfall 50 can cause problems; some conflicts are not neatly resolved; there are different 51 views about the causes of eutrophication; etc; 52
- Knowledge, both local experience (e.g. the importance of fish breeding areas) 53 and scientific knowledge can play a central role in making management more 54 effective: 55

1 Lakes are not worlds unto themselves. The difficulty of managing lakes without • 2 involving groups from the upstream catchments, for some problems, is 3 illustrated by the siltation problem; Also the importance of influences from outside the region is illustrated by the 4 5 effect that international markets had on development of the irrigation area; The choices that a decision maker faces are heavily constrained by other 6 7 developments-the town's sewage treatment system was originally introduced for aesthetic and sanitary reasons, and subsequent actions to reduce nutrient 8 loading to the lake had to take account of the existence of this point nutrient 9 10 source; and, Finally, the need for a coordinated, planned approach to take account of these 11 linked influences so that the overall benefits are maximized is hinted at. 12 13 This story is also shown in diagram form in Figure 2.1. The upper part of the figure 14 15 shows the change in values supplied by the lake and its catchment over time. During the expansion phase there is a steady increase in values as an increasing number of 16 resources are used—fish, water supply, transport, aesthetic enjoyment, recreation, etc. 17 18 Two development interventions, the introduction of improved fishing techniques (D1) and 19 20 the introduction of irrigated agriculture (D2), lead to significant increases in the values 21 extracted from the lake basin. At the same time (lower part of the figure) there is a 22 gradual deterioration in the state of the lake from the side effects of these and other 23 developments. At some point (V1) this deterioration in the lake's environment-24 increasing nutrient levels, spread of weeds and algae, unsightly and smelly water-begins 25 to affect the value of the resources that can be extracted from the lake and overall production plateaus and then begins to decline (V2). Remedial actions (C1) such as 26 27 upgrading of sewage treatment plant and the ban on use of phosphate-based detergents 28 lead to improvements in water quality and the values extracted from the lake increase 29 again. While there are cases in which the degradation of lake environment is small and 30 the response to the restoration efforts is rapid, most often, the degradation may turn out 31 to be more extensive than expected and the restoration efforts may prove to be 32 extremely costly and time-consuming (R1), if not impossible (R2). The management 33 authorities and the communities often do not have the resources to invest in conservation/remediation interventions (either structural or non-structural) to the point 34 35 where the lake returns to pristine conditions. Nevertheless, at the end of the story, the 36 communities may be better off than they were at the beginning. 37 38 While the above story illustrates many important features of lakes and their management, each lake possesses unique features, as is shown in the 28 lakes briefs. Each lake has its 39 40 own set of resources values, its own set of problems and its own set of potential management actions. In the above story, the government accepted that the town sewage 41 42 was the most likely cause of the algae and aquatic weeds and agreed to invest in remedial upgrade works because of the high value the townspeople placed on a clean and 43 44 enjoyable lake. In other towns, it is possible that the townspeople would not have the 45 same pride in their lake and would rather see the funds spent on further development investments. Such judgments depend on the values that people place on the resources of 46 each lake, the physical characteristics of each lake that lead to biophysical manifestations 47 48 of problems, and the socio-political characteristics of the decision processes for each lake. 49 50



1 Resource Value of Lakes and Lake Basins

The wide range of uses of lakes and their catchments are amply shown in the 28 lakes
briefs. These various uses all contribute to the total value of the lake. Among the uses
cited are the following:

- "...direct use of the lake for fisheries in net present value terms ... is then some PhP30.5 million" (Laguna de Bay).
- "...a potential source of water supply for Northeastern Estonia and the Estonian capital Tallinn" (Lake Peipsi).
 - "...provides water supply for domestic (in the dry years), and industrial and agricultural uses" (Lake Dianchi).
- 12 13 14

٠

6 7

8

9 10

11

"...biodiversity offers a resource base for tourism attraction" (Lake Baringo).

Many lakes also provide valuable services to nature, such as serving as habitats for
aquatic fauna and flora. These services are also part of the total value of lakes and their
basins. One such service is the provision of genetic materials, e.g., for improving fish
strains used in aquaculture. Another such service is as regulator of extreme hydrologic
events such as floods and droughts.

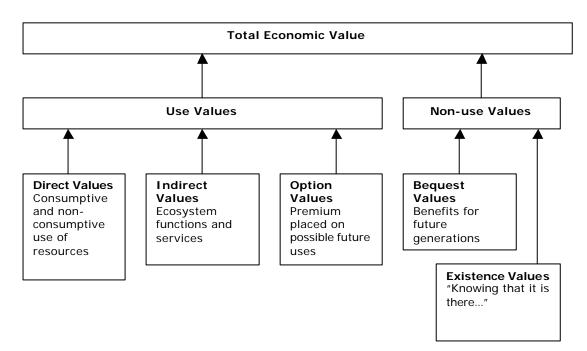
20

The value of lake water and the resources in the lake-basin ecosystem can be divided into "use" and "non-use" values, the terms that are typically used by economists to divide the totality of the goods and services from any resource.

24

Use values are divided into direct use and indirect use values. Direct use values are those
that come directly from using various parts of the lake ecosystem. These include
both "consumptive" uses and "non-consumptive" uses. Consumptive uses are those that
occur when the user actually consumes the resource (e.g. catching fish or waterfowl,
harvesting of reeds and other plants, diversion of water for human use or irrigation). This
categorization of types of values from lakes is shown in Figure 2.2.

31



32

33 34

Figure 2.2. Categories of Uses of Lake Resources

Lake fishermen in the story were engaging in a consumptive, direct-use of the lake's

36 resources. A key point about consumptive uses is that use by one person reduces the

amount available for others to use, called 'rivalry' by economists (see Box 1.3 for further

discussion). In contrast, non-consumptive direct uses do not reduce the amount of the resource available to others. Non-consumptive uses include certain types of recreation, aesthetic and amenity values, or general ecosystem services. The later residents of the town who enjoyed the aesthetics of the lake were engaged in non-consumptive, direct use of the lake resource. Boating and sailing are also non-consumptive, direct uses. In these cases the "users" does not actually consume the resource, or reduce the availability of the resource for other users.

8

Of course, in the extreme, you can have so many people using the lake in a non-9 10 consumptive, direct use manner that congestion sets in and crowding can reduce the 11 "benefit" that each user receives. Congestion can be observed within a particular use 12 sector or among sectors. An example of the former would be when lake-based recreation 13 became so crowded that all the recreators experienced decreased enjoyment. An 14 example of the latter would be when expansion of the water intake structures to service 15 the town's water supply started to interfere with the fish cages. In general direct uses of the resources in the lakes and their basin are both easier to identify and easier to 16 measure, both qualitatively and quantitatively, than other parts of lake values. 17

18

Indirect use values are also often important and include most services provided by 19 20 healthy ecosystems (e.g. maintaining water quantity or quality; moderating flooding; 21 providing a sink for effluents). Indirect use merely means that the beneficiary is located 22 somewhere else (usually downstream) and receives a benefit from the lake ecosystem. For example, downstream populations will benefit from these ecosystem services 23 24 provided by the lake, and will enjoy them as direct use values (again, they may be either 25 consumptive or non-consumptive). In Japan, for example, one important benefit from Lake Biwa being maintained as a sound ecosystem with good water quality is the indirect 26 27 use value accruing to the people living downstream of the lake in Osaka and Kyoto. 28 Similarly, in Lake Toba, an indirect beneficiary of the lake water includes various 29 industrial facilities including an aluminum smelting plant that are dependent on cheap hydropower produced by the Asahan River hydroelectric plant. Indirect use values are 30 31 often harder to measure and value than the more easily observed direct use values. 32

Obviously the line between direct and indirect use values gets blurred in many cases lakeshore communities that extract lake water as a source of drinking or municipal water should probably be labeled as "direct" users of the lake and its resources, even if the consumers receive their water in a pipe and do not know where it comes from!

37

38 There are also important non-use values associated with lake ecosystems. Non-use values are as the label suggests-values that people receive but without any use-direct 39 40 or indirect—of the lake or its resources. These non-use values include the benefit people 41 receive from knowing that the lakes are there and are healthy (e.g. the benefits that 42 Armenians derive from knowing that Lake Sevan in Armenia continues to exist), and the value associated with leaving an intact and healthy resource for future generations. 43 44 These two types of non-use value are referred to as "existence values" and "bequest 45 values".

46

47 An additional category of value is referred to as Option Value—the benefit that people 48 receive from knowing that the resource will be there in case they want to use it in the 49 future. This is a hybrid between Use and Non-use Values and is usually listed under Use Values as a form of "deferred use". Use values are often reflected to a greater or lesser 50 extent in prices—payment for water supply, in fish prices, etc. However, the two types of 51 non-use values (bequest values and existence values) as well as option value are rarely 52 53 reflected in market prices simply because, by their very natures, they are not traded in markets. The consequence is that they are commonly overlooked by decision makers. 54 However, they may be very important to the people concerned and are therefore valid 55 components of the total value of the lake (see Appendix A for more details on the formal 56 economic analysis of lake resources and the concept of Total Economic Value). 57

It is also important to note that, in general, lake values are often over-looked by decision makers for two major reasons: lack of information and institutional weaknesses. Because of the pervasive nature of externalities (see Box 2.1 for definition), many benefits from improved lake management affect someone else, often at some distance. Actions in the upper basin affect both the quantity and quality of water that drains into the lake, and

actions along the lakeshore and in the lake affect the water that leaves the lake, and the
ecology of the lake. For smaller lakes it may be easier to actually see the links (as in
Lake Dianchi or Toba for example) while for very large or international lakes it is harder

- to understand all of the actions that affect the lake resource (and are in turn affected bythe lake's water quality).
- 12

1 2

3

4 5

6

13 The second constraint to recognizing lake benefits is an institutional one-government ministries and agencies are held responsible for and are rewarded for the actions that 14 15 they take that affect their differing resources. The Fisheries Department is accountable to the fishermen and fish catch, even if fishing activities ultimately affect the welfare of 16 downstream water consumers and agriculture users also. Since these groups fall 17 18 "outside" the area of responsibility of the Fisheries Department, benefits and costs that 19 occur elsewhere are largely ignored. A similar case exists with agricultural authorities in 20 the upper watershed. Lake basin management authorities are designed to overcome 21 these two problems but, even if they have a broader knowledge of the resource, they 22 usually lack any effective management authority at the sectoral level. Therefore the institutional management challenges remain (and are discussed in Chapter 3). 23

24

25 **Typical Problems Facing the World's Lakes**

26

27 Problems can be defined as the impediments to obtaining desired values from lake 28 resources. Ironically, problems often arise from the side effects of the use of lake 29 resources. The proximate causes of these problems can arise from both the direct 30 exploitation of lake resources as well as from human activities taking place within and 31 outside of the lake basins that have little to do with the direct use of the lake resources. 32 Thus, the farmers who settled in the catchment above the lake caused problems for the 33 fishermen, even though they (the farmers) were not using lake resources directly. This type of problem would be classified as an externality since the farmers received the 34 35 benefits from soil cultivation and the downstream fishermen bore the costs. Externalities 36 are particularly important for lakes and rare expanded on later in this chapter and in 37 Appendix A. Downstream users too can cause problems for users of lake resources. For 38 example, downstream irrigation schemes can place demands on water from the lake that restrict developments around the lake. 39

40 41

42

43

44

45

46

The root causes, as discussed in the World Lake Vision, generally include:

- Increased demands for developing and using lake resource due in part to population growth and economic development
- Limited public awareness and understanding of human impacts on lakes
- Insufficient governance and accountability systems
- Inadequate mechanisms for managing international lake systems.
- 47 48

The lake briefs show that lakes around the world experience diverse problems. From a 49 biophysical perspective, these can be categorized as water quantity, water quality and 50 51 ecological problems. Water quantity problems arise when there is either too much or not enough water to meet human uses. Flooding because of increased runoff of cleared 52 53 catchments and lake drawdown because of excessive water withdrawals are clear examples. There are numerous water quality problems ranging from sedimentation, to 54 the presence of toxic substances, to excess quantities of nutrients. Ecological problems 55 arise because lakes, amongst their other functions, provide habitats that support various 56 biological organisms and communities which are the basis of many of the ecological 57

services that people require from lakes. Note that under the above definition a change in
water quantity, quality or ecology is, by itself, not a problem unless it represents a loss of
value to someone.

4

5 Problems with lakes have been documented in a number of earlier reports including the 6 "Survey of the State of the World's Lakes," compiled in the late 1980s and early 1990s by ILEC and UNEP. Based on this work, Kira (1997) concluded that lakes face a number of 7 8 widespread and continuing problems including eutrophication, acidification, toxic 9 contamination, water level changes, salinization, siltation, and the introduction of exotic 10 species. These and other problems continue to be identified in the lake briefs 11 commissioned for this report (Table 2.1). The table identifies the primary causes and 12 their effects on lake uses and values, and identifies lakes in this project exhibiting these 13 problems. More detailed information can be found in the National Research Council (1992), UNEP (1994), Dinar et al. (1995), Ayres et al. (1996), Nakamura (1997), Duker 14 (2001), Jorgensen et al. (2003) and the Experience and Lessons Learned Briefs in the 15 attached CD-ROM. 16 17

18

Table 2.1	Somo typical	problems facing	the world's lakes
	Some typical	provients racing	the world's lakes

Problem	Cause	Impacts on Lake Values	Example from this Study
Biodiversity loss	Many kinds of human impacts, including most on this list	Loss of ecosystem function; loss of option value for future use	Lake Victoria
Climate variability	Natural and anthropogenic causes	Changes in hydrological balances of lakes	Lake Chad
Eutrophication	Excessive nutrient input	Algal blooms, excessive macrophyte growths, loss of water transparency, taste and odor compounds, algal toxins	Lake Dianchi
Exotic species	Natural, intentional, or unintentional introduction	Food web changes, loss of biodiversity	Laurentian Great Lakes (zebra mussel)
Overfishing	Unsustainable exploitation of fish for sustenance and commercial purposes	Decreased fish catches, loss of biodiversity	Lake Malawi
Pathogens	Fecal contamination from domestic and livestock sources	Waterborne diseases	Lake Ohrid
Salinization	Diversion of inflow, discharge of saline waters from irrigated lands, runoff of salts from deforested land	Ecosystem degradation, loss of freshwater supply	Aral Sea
Siltation	Soil erosion from cultivation and deforestation	Decrease in lake volume and flood control capacity, destruction of aquatic habitats	Lake Baringo
Structural impacts	Lakeshore development (e.g., embankments, weirs, roads)	Destruction of littoral communities in lake	Lake Biwa
Toxic contamination	Industrial effluents agricultural and urban runoff, atmospheric deposition	Toxicity to fish and disruption of endocrine system, bioaccumulation in fish increases risk to humans and other predators	Laurentian Great Lakes (DDT and PCB contamination)
Water level decline	Diversion of inflow, over- withdrawal of water	Secondary salinization, ecosystem degradation	Lake Naivasha

19

20 These problems are not unique to lakes—they occur in most waterbodies. However, the

- special characteristics of lakes, described in the previous chapter, influence the way in
- which the problems are manifest in lakes.

1 The relatively **long retention time** of lakes means that many problems can take a long 2 time to become apparent. This is particularly true where the problem arises because of 3 long term change to some component of the lake that is not visible. For example, toxic 4 contaminants can build up in the sediments over many years before they cause a 5 problem by entering the foodchain. Similarly, alterations to the lower levels of the lake's foodchain because sediments in the water cause changes in light regime may not be 6 7 immediately apparent to the users of the lake. By the same token, these problems can 8 take a long time to correct in lakes, a point taken up in the next section on management 9 responses.

10

The **complexity of lake dynamics** also influences the way in which problems become 11 apparent. This is readily seen in the case of eutrophication where a steady buildup of 12 13 nutrients can apparently cause little problem in lakes until a critical point is reached. At 14 that critical point the lake can abruptly switch into a different state with reduced use and 15 non-use values. In the case of Lake Victoria, nutrients had been building up in the lake water and sediments for decades without apparent effects until the early 1990s when, 16 quite suddenly, the basis of the lake's ecosystem shifted. Cyanobacteria dominated the 17 18 base of the foodchain, much of the lake became turbid and blooms of potentially toxic 19 cyanobacteria became common in the near shore areas of the lake. It is known, from experience in other lakes, that it is very difficult (if not impossible) to shift such a lake 20 back to its previous state (see Figure 1.1). 21

22

23 The transmissivity of lakes simply means that problems can seldom be localized with 24 lakes. The fluidity and mixing of the water ensures that physical, chemical and ecological 25 problems become apparent, to some degree, throughout the whole lake and downstream 26 waters. Floods affect all of the lake's shoreline; pollution spreads beyond its source to 27 affect much of the lake; and biological problems, such as introduced species, can spread 28 throughout the lake. However, there are often limits on the extent to which problems can 29 spread throughout the lake. Deep lakes are often stratified and the bottom waters do not 30 readily mix with the top waters, and large lakes are not completely uniform across their 31 surfaces.

32

Box 2.1. Transmissivity and Externalities

The transmissivity characteristic of lakes means that externalities are a particularly important source of problems in lake management. Externalities occur when the action of one individual (or group) affects the welfare of another individual (or group) and the latter group is not effectively consulted (or compensated) during decision-making. In the case of lakes, the flow of water from the catchment to the lake readily transmits problems from upstream to downstream (as in the example of the farmers and the fishermen); the transmissivity of the lake means that many people around the lake can be affected by the actions of a few.

Externalities are commonplace in the lake briefs. Upstream forest clearance results in increased sedimentation in Lake Baringo. The introduction of water hyacinth in Lake Victoria hinders lake transportation and fishing. Tonle Sap water levels are affected by changes in the Mekong River annual flows, and some of these changes have their origin in China or Laos. These externalities are all transmitted by the fluidity of water: many are local, but some are international.

Externalities as usually thought of as negative and so cause problems. However, they can also be positive. For example, reforestation in the upper watershed around Lake Sevan has improved water quantity and quality in the lake over time. In all cases where externalities exist, however, there is a "break" between the person taking the action and the people where the impact is felt. And since there is no link, normal market signals (that is, prices) do not reflect these links and their impact.

Problems caused by externalities can be overcome by "internalizing the externalities"—that is, by including benefits and costs, wherever they occur (this speaks to correctly defining the boundary of the analysis) and whomever they affect (a social-welfare perspective). This is easier said than done. With sufficient foresight and recognition of the issues, however, it is possible to do such an analysis and thereby make better decisions about management alternatives. In addition, even if some of these impacts cannot be formally valued in economic terms, just recognizing them and including them qualitatively in the analysis is an important first step.

1 **Response to the Problems: Management Interventions** 2 3 The story at the beginning of this chapter illustrates that there are two types of 4 management interventions in lake management, one for **development** of lake resource 5 values and the other for conservation/remediation of the same. As shown in Figure 6 2.1, the cumulative impacts (i.e., the problems arisen) of development interventions 7 often necessitate introduction of conservation/remediation interventions. Intervention measures in either case can be structural (e.g., construction of water intake structure as 8 versus sewerage system), or non-structural (introduction of new fishing technology vs. 9 10 new regulatory provision for the control of effluent discharge). For the purpose of this 11 report, we confine ourselves to management interventions for conservation/remediation 12 (C/R interventions) of resource values. 13 14 Therefore, the story of this report-how conservation/remediation interventions are 15 carried out—is the story of how lake uses are governed by society. "Governing" is defined (Oxford English Dictionary) as "control(ing), influence(ing), regulat(ing), or 16 determin(ing)...the course or issue of events." The sort of governing acts common in the 17 18 28 lake briefs include: 19 20 forming organizations that provide continuity of lake management, including ٠ 21 development of plans, representation of the goals of different groups, 22 implementation and management of structural investments, and enforcement of 23 decisions (Chapter 3) 24 developing rules, including police powers as well as financial incentives, about • sharing the lake basin's resources and limiting externalities for other users 25 26 (Chapter 4) 27 • changing peoples values so that the net benefits gained from the use of a lake 28 basin's resources are maximized (Chapter 5) 29 engaging people in management through devolution of responsibilities (Chapter 5) • introducing technological measures to reduce or ameliorate adverse impacts 30 31 (Chapter 6). 32 33 Just as the characteristics of lakes have an effect on the way in which problems occur, they also have an influence on how to manage those problems. The long retention 34 35 time of lakes—particularly for larger and deeper lakes—necessitates that their 36 management be anticipatory, committed, and well-planned over the long term. A good 37 understanding of the physical, chemical and biological processes occurring; long-term 38 goals supported from the highest political level to the local communities; and well worked 39 out, long-term plans will be needed if lake management is to be successful. The 40 instruments of management—institutions, people, laws, rules and regulations, finances 41 for operations, investments in infrastructure, knowledge for efficient interventions-all 42 need to be established and supported for the long term but, at the same time, be flexible enough to adapt to changing values and new knowledge. In fact, the long timescales 43 44 involved in lake management argue for the existence of institutions in order to give 45 permanence to management beyond the shorter timescales of individuals. One other 46 implication is the need for secure financing to make sure that structural and nonstructural interventions are effective over the long term. 47 48 49 The complex dynamics of lakes also argues for drawing on the best available scientific knowledge and, if necessary, mounting research programs to obtain chunks of knowledge 50 that are critical to management. However, there needs to be a proper conceptual model 51 of these dynamics worked out in advance in order to make sure that the research is truly 52 focused on the critical chunks for management. 53 54 Finally, the transmissivity of lakes and the consequent difficulty of excluding users from 55 56 accessing many of the lake's resources has many management implications. Common

1 there is no incentive for individual users to limit their use of these resources. Rules are 2 usually introduced, once the resource shows signs of over-harvesting, to ensure that 3 these common pool resources are shared equitably. Rules may also need to be 4 introduced to protect, public goods, the other category of non-excludable lake uses. The 5 visual amenity of the lake and flood protection from levy banks are examples of such 6 public goods. Unlike common pool resources, these rules are not needed to allocate the 7 goods amongst competing users (by definition the use by one person does not affect 8 another person's use). Instead the rules may be needed to protect the quality of the 9 good. For example, prohibitions may need to be introduced on dumping rubbish to 10 protect the visual amenity of the lake or rules may needed to ensure that all beneficiaries from flood protection contribute towards the costs. 11 12 13 The transmissivity of water also means that, for many problems, the lowest effective level of management (the principle of subsidiarity) is the lake and its catchment. 14

15 Managing the water resource at this level can help internalize the externalities that arise from the transmissivity. Of course, having a management structure that is responsible for 16 17 the whole of a lake basin is no guarantee that these externalities will be managed - that 18 will depend on the sense of community, financial transfers, etc. This does not necessarily 19 imply that a monolithic lake basin management authority is the best institution for 20 management. Rather it argues for management coordination across the area of the basin 21 and, often, coordination across the different sectors that use the basin's resources. 22 Sometimes this can be most efficiently carried out by a single basin management authority; sometimes not. 23

24

26

25 The Components of Lake Basin Management

From the preceding discussion, it is apparent that there are a number of aspects to
managing a lake's resources to ensure that they are accessed equitably and efficiently,
given the inherent characteristics of lakes and their basins. These aspects, or
components, can be categorized as:

31 32

33

34

35

36

Institutions

- Incentives and Regulations
- People (Values and Participation)
- Technology
- Information
- Finance
- 37 38

Institutions carry forward the mandate for managing the lake and its catchment for the
benefit of all lake resource users. They are sanctioned by society to give them the
necessary authority and longevity to operate effectively. They can operate at local level
(such as local councils), at regional level (such as a lake basin authority), at national
level (such as sectoral government departments) or at international level (such as
international commissions for transboundary lakes).

45
46 **Rules** governing peoples' use of lake resources and impacts on lakes can be encoded in
47 formal laws, statutes and regulations and implemented by formal institutions. They can
48 also be informal, often being developed and accepted amongst traditional groups of lake

49 people. Rules are used to both ensure equitable allocation of lake resources and to

- 50 ensure that these resources are not wasted.
- 51

52 The **involvement of people** is central to lake management. They decide the values to 53 be obtained from the lake's resources; they provide knowledge and experience; they 54 form informal organizations for management; they provide support for enforcing rules; 55 and they can be a source of the finance needed to operationalize management. 56 Institutions don't operate in a vacuum; they require leadership from committed and 57 and the state of the finance needed to be a source of the

57 visionary individuals as is seen in some of the case studies.

Technology is not always essential for management; non-technological solutions can sometimes be sufficient. However, technical responses can dramatically increase access to a lake's resources and contribute to the resolution of some types of problems. For example, embankments can significantly add to a lake's ability to buffer floods (an indirect use value) while sewage treatment plants can be very effective at removing wastes and contaminants from concentrated sources of pollution.

- 8 **Information**, both traditional knowledge and scientifically acquired knowledge, 9 10 promotes efficient management. That is, the more that reliable and demonstrable 11 knowledge is used in management, the more likely it is that the goals of those groups using a lake's resources will be met at minimal cost. This report places considerable 12 13 emphasis on scientific knowledge, primarily because it is obtained via a process that is open to scrutiny and leads to incremental improvements in understanding. This emphasis 14 15 does not deny the value of traditional knowledge-in the introductory lake story, the experienced fishermen were well aware of the role that the intermittently flooded 16 wetlands in played in fish breeding. 17
- 18

1

Finance is the Achilles heel of lake management in many developing countries. Policies can be well thought-out; institutions can be properly designed and established; rules can be embedded in laws; people can be involved; etc. But if there is no provision for long term funding of both structural and non-structural interventions then management is a hollow concept. This is the component which, in practice, is most difficult to establish successfully.

25

26 Putting these six components in some sort a management framework (a plan) may be 27 easy on paper but is likely to be quite difficult in reality. For one thing, the critical 28 deficiency in any one of the components could falter implementation of the plan. 29 Additionally, there is a set of basic quality of the system of governance that will have to 30 be satisfied for any such plan to be adequately pursuable. For example, (i) there must be 31 a sound political system where those in authority are selected, monitored and replaced, 32 (ii) the government must have the capacity to effectively manage its resources and 33 implement sound policies, and (iii) the citizens and the state respect the institutions that govern economic and social interactions among them, etc. These are collectively qualified 34 as "good governance" requirements and it encompasses more than just the procedural 35 36 aspects of planning and management. The "good governance" also includes concepts of 37 legitimacy, fairness, wisdom, acceptability, and accountability.

38

"Good governance", on the other hand, will not be achievable unless the elements of lake 39 40 basin management are carried out fairly and efficiently. Fairly means that all groups and 41 individuals receive equitable access to the lake's resources; have some level of certainty 42 in planning for their future use of those resources; have a say in the decisions that affect them; and are compensated when they lose resources that they have a right to (see Box 43 44 2.2). It also requires that governments and institutions act in the interests of all citizens 45 and not on behalf of powerful groups; consequently transparency of decision-making and access to legal redress are important components of good governance. Efficiency means 46 47 that the components of management are implemented with minimal waste of resources. 48 However, the long retention time of lakes requires that efficiency needs to be assessed in the long term; i.e. interventions that appear to be efficient in the short-term may not be 49 efficient in the longer term. 50

51

52 These six components of lake management are discussed in detail in Section II of this 53 report as part of good governance. These discussions draw lessons from the case studies 54 and other experience about the application of these components in practice. 55

Box 2.2. Equity

Equity considerations, that is, who benefits and who loses (and how much) from any action, are important in managing a lake ecosystem. The distribution of costs and benefits is important for ethical reasons, as well as being an important factor in designing effective policies and management plans; i.e. there are two dimensions to equity—distributional concerns (the people dimension) and effective policy design. Formal government institutions are more likely to address the concerns of those people who are both "mainstream" and more powerful economically. Consequently, decision makers need to be particularly aware of the needs and role of poorer and more politically –marginal groups. These same groups may also belong to minority populations. Fishermen, who are often politically weak and marginalized, illustrate the second dimension. A sustainable fishing industry can promote an ecologically sustainable lake, for the benefit of other groups.

The ideas of "internalizing externalities" and "maximizing social welfare" carry the implicit assumption that economic transfers are actually made and that those who are disadvantaged by some action are compensated. Obviously this is not always the case. Therefore even when the "socially preferred" management option is identified and implemented, it is important to make sure that the required transfers and compensation actually take place. Equity concerns are among the most difficult issues any natural resource decision maker has tc address, and lakes are no exception!

Equity is not the same as equality. Equality implies that ALL stakeholders are equal with respect to income or resources. This is almost never the case anywhere in the world. Equity, on the other hand, is a measure of "fairness" and implicitly implies that those who are poorer/worse off are not disproportionately affected by any change. The Lake Kariba brief describes the way in which the Tonga people were displaced and made worse off by the construction of a large reservoir, while the benefits were reaped by powerful sections of a colonial society. In fact, an *equity objective* for lake management may mean that management actions disproportionately benefit the poorest members of society (even if there is a "cost" in terms of conventional economic measures of benefits and costs).

24 Section II. Meeting the Governance Challenge

This section, presenting the lessons learned from the 28 lakes regarding institutions

27 (Chapter 3), incentives and regulations (Chapter 4), people (Chapter 5), technology

28 (Chapter 6), information (Chapter 7), and financing (Chapter 8) is the core of the report.

29 While each chapter in Section II can be read as a stand-alone description of one

30 component of lake management, the case studies show that sustainable lake

31 management requires a grasp of all the themes, taken together as a whole.

3∠

Chapter 3. Effective Institutions: Responding to Change

Key Lessons Learned about Institutions

- Effective institutions in one sector can expand to tackle more complex issues.
- Scientific institutions are often a good starting point for transboundary lake dialogue.
- External accreditation can trigger effective management.
- Without political will, institutions are ineffective.
- Informal institutions can be more flexible in responding to issues.

3 4

Institutions: Society's Response to Scarcity

5

In the absence of scarcity, there is little need for institutions. In the story at the start of 6 7 the previous chapter population densities were initially low and development limited. 8 There were enough of the lake's natural resources—water, fish, reeds, other products— 9 for all to enjoy and consume as much as they want. As a result of both population growth and economic development, however, resources started to become scarce-that is, their 10 uses become congested, and it becomes necessary to control and limit access to the 11 12 "commons" and allocate the goods and services provided by the lake basin through rules 13 of various sorts. Institutions are the originators, custodians and implementers of the 14 agreed "rules of the game," or the "humanly devised constraints on human behavior". 15 16 As the level of scarcity and complexity grow, the nature of institutions also changes. Management, and institutions, typically evolve from the individual (or private 17 18 management), to communal forms of management, to public or national management. 19 For international lakes, transboundary management is difficult to achieve and typically 20 occurs at a later stage of development. Basically, institutions are society's way of 21 responding to the problem of "scarcity" by devising rules to allocate the goods and 22 services provided by the lake and implementing those rules. 23 24 Institutions and institutional arrangements are essential to address the "common pool" 25 aspect of lake management, to reduce the conflicts that otherwise inevitably arise from competition. Yet they are not costless. The lake briefs indicate that institutions and 26 27 institutional arrangements are expensive to set up and maintain. 28 29 What are effective institutions?

30

In the context of lake basin management, effective institutions generate an improvement
in the lake environment by distributing resources equitably and efficiently. Specifically,
effective lake institutions, individually and as a group, share a number of characteristics.
It is observed in the Lake Briefs that effective institutions...

35 36

- respond to new problems as they evidence themselves both in the ecosystem and in the "human system".
- tackle critical problems at the most appropriate scale. For example, hot spots can be identified within the lake basin and dealt with on a localized basis (e.g., Missisquoi Bay in Lake Champaign; Akanoi Bay in Lake Biwa; numerous islands in Lake Malawi). For issues confined to these locations, local institutions may be sufficient.
- remember, learn, and build and maintain both personal and institutional
 relationships ("social capital") with key stakeholders, including funders. This is
 greatly facilitated by the continuity of key staff. A key individual, catalytic and
 sometimes charismatic, can play a critical role in institution building, even if not
 permanently attached to a single organization.
- 48 <u>mobilize</u> resources, direct government financing (or budgetary sources, if a government line agency or local government), and external funding.

 <u>address</u> collective choice problems (conflicts) that make it difficult for existing (usually sectoral) governance and user stakeholders to solve on their own business as usual basis. It does this by involving stakeholders to identify problems and suggest solutions. It also addresses the political problem of handling conflicts and tradeoffs among stakeholders, including new ones.

- <u>secure</u> the trust of the regulated and legitimacy among the public (Chilika Lake, India after 1997; Laguna de Bay, Philippines), and
 - <u>forge</u> issue linkages, especially where source and affected party are different.

10 Effective institutions accumulate "institutional capital" as they evolve and learn.

Institutional capital comes in various forms—social, human, informational, and physical. 11 It allows effective institutions to change their agendas in response to changes in the 12 13 natural and human environments; to address problems involving many different 14 stakeholders (collective-choice problems); to be prepared for crises, in part because they 15 are capable of learning from the experiences of others; to focus on critical problems; to enjoy a high level of legitimacy and trust among key stakeholders, built up over time 16 through credible commitments; and to mobilize financial resources on a sustained basis, 17 18 especially from a variety of different sources, including end users.

20 A Typology of Institutional Forms for Lake Basin Management

21

19

1 2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Institutions can take various forms. The following examples are listed in order of
increasing formal powers. However, this does not necessarily imply that more formal
structures are better than informal organizations. Given the long time required to build
effective institutions, building from below (a "bottom-up" approach) and on the basis of
accumulated institutional capital may create the most effective and strongest institutions.

27 28

29

Customary and self-regulated management

30 **Customary and communal structures** for single sectors, such as fisheries, are

effective in many situations with low population pressure and fairly abundant resources.
In many cases, local sectoral organizations have expanded into multisectoral institutions

- 33 without the "benefit" of regulatory oversight (Box 3.1).
- 34

Box 3.1. An Evolving Institutional Base: The Lake Naivasha Example

In 1929, the owners of the Lake Naivasha, Kenya foreshore organized themselves into the Lake Naivasha Riparian Owners Association (LNROA) in order to regulate the use of the lake bed periodically exposed in from of their properties as the lake level rose and fell naturally. These owners were, in general, wealthy, influential Europeans and European-Kenyans who wanted to protect this land because it provided lake access, a scenic foreground to their properties, and was useful for grazing activities. Other groups with an interest in the lake, such as fishermen, nomadic Maasai grazers, and residents of the local towns and villages were not part of the Association.

The LNROA was granted custodianship of this riparian land by the colonial government in 1933. The Association successfully regulated access to these riparian lands from that time through to the present day although, for most of that period, it was not an active organization. In the early 1990s it started to become more active because of the increasing pressures on the lake. It changed its name to the Lake Naivasha Riparian Association (LNRA) and expanded its membership base to include members that were not riparian property owners but who had an interest in the health of the lake.

During the 1980s and 1990s the population within the lake basin grew dramatically and a thriving cut-flower trade commenced on the shores of the lake. The larger flower growers organized themselves into a representative institution—the Lake Naivasha Growers Group—to respond to adverse publicity, including claims that their industry was polluting the lake. For a number of years, the LNGG and the LNRA were in conflict. However, by the late 1990s these conflicts had been mainly sorted out and the two institutions started working together for the management of the lake.

A management plan was drawn up for the lake in the late 1990s and the Lake Naivasha Management Implementation Committee (LNMIC) was formed to implement it. The LNRA plays a leading role on this crosssectoral institution along with representatives of many other groups with an interest in the lake—fishermen, town people, and government agencies such as the Kenyan Wildlife Service. The LNGG are not formally members and nor are representatives of the settlers in the upper catchment and the traditional Maasai. These groups will likely be brought into the process, both due to the recognition by many riparian groups that the sediment load entering the lake from the upper catchment may become a problem to themselves, and because of new environmental and water laws in Kenya. The recent Kenya Water Act allows for the formation of representative Advisory Committees in each catchment that will have influence in the allocation of water and the regulation of pollution. When this happens, the LNMIC will likely evolve into the regional Advisory Committee and the evolution of the lake management institution will continue.

Coordinating committee

1 2

3 4 As population pressures and competition for resources grow, often a first step towards 5 coordinated management is the creation of a coordinating committee. A committee or 6 office, typically consisting of sectoral agencies (or, internationally, representatives from 7 member governments), is formed to coordinate efforts, while implementation remains 8 with existing sectoral and regional institutions. These committees are often weak since 9 they do not have legislative backing, a separate budget, or independent staffing. As such, 10 they are voluntary creatures of the sectoral ministries or, in international cases, of the member governments. Many international lake basin commissions fall into this category. 11 12

13 Coordinating agency

14 15 A coordinating agency has legal authority or some higher level authorization (such as cabinet approval), a separate budget and staff, and (sometimes) organizational 16 17 independence from sectoral agencies. It does not have executive authority but exists to coordinate the actions of sectoral and regional institutions. For these reasons it is more 18 19 powerful than a coordinating committee. Examples include the Lake Chilika Development 20 Authority, the Cambodia National Mekong Committee, the Department of Lake Biwa and the Environment (Shiga Prefectural government), the interagency Lake Dianchi Protection 21 22 Committee and Bureau, and the International Joint Commission of the Great Lakes. Most 23 of the active lake basin management bodies in our briefs are coordinating agencies. The 24 coordinating agency may be concerned with just the lake or it may also include the catchment. Its powers include persuasion, facilitation, and convening. 25

- 26
- 27 Coordinating agencies face several major challenges:
- 28

29 These agencies are often quite weak and have to contend with the complexity of

- 30 preexisting, often imbedded, institutions and stakeholder groups. For example, the
- 31 Chilika Development Authority maintains institutional linkages with seven state
- 32 government organizations, four NGOs, three national ministries, two other national 33 organizations, four international organizations, nine research institutions, and four
- organizations, four international organizations, nine research institutions, and four different categories of community groups (see Figure # in Chilika brief). This is a difficult
- coordinating task and requires strong leadership coupled with firm political backing by
 politicians to succeed.
- 37

Successful coordination and the trust relationships required for coordination rely on the presence of key individuals, especially at the chief minister or governor level but also in agency management. The experience of the Lake Laguna Development Authority and others is that one of the greatest challenges facing a development authority is the

- 42 frequency of changes in the government and appointed directors.
- 43

It is important that "coordination" not become a pretext for shedding responsibility. An effective agency must be an advocate for integrated lake management policy, working together with stakeholders to solve problems and, ideally, with a policy patron at a supra-sectoral level, such as the governorship. Preparing a lake basin management plan is an effective tool for policy coordination (see Chapter 9).

1 Executive (regulatory) agency 2

3 A regulatory agency can actually carry out actions, such as levying fees or creating 4 enforcing regulations, under its own authority. Since the potential always exists for 5 conflict with sectoral agencies, executive agencies should be authorized through 6 legislation and retain powers such as permitting, policy setting, financing and 7 implementation.

8

9 Since the existence of such an executive agency means that others have to give up 10 power, they are often hard to establish. Prerequisites for creating an executive agency often include a) a long evolutionary history of trust building; b) a crisis; and c) no 11 international borders. Probably the best instance of such an agency outside the 12 13 governmental structure is the Lake Laguna Development Authority, which combines coordinating, development and regulatory functions (see Box 3.2). The water resources 14 15 departments of Orissa and Madhya Pradesh (Lake Chilika and Bhoj Wetland, respectively) provide both coordinating and regulatory authorities, but are not lake-specific agencies. 16 The actual executive powers vested in an executive agency can include the following 17 18 functions: Regulatory, Development, Conservation, and/or Restoration. 19

Box 3.2. Institutional reengineering of the Laguna Lake Development Authority

Inherent in the existing LLDA Charter is the developmental function for water resources development purposes, but at present the LLDA is performing more of its regulatory function than its planning and development roles. This overarching mandate of LLDA has not been realized because of lack of capacity and appropriate mechanisms to enable the Authority to initiate and involve the private sector in capital intensive infrastructure development projects in the region. Further, the financial flexibility of LLDA and other government owned corporations, in terms of sourcing finances and utilization, has largely been constrained by the Philippine Government's multi-layered approval process for fund solicitation through the NEDA/Investment Coordinating Committee.

Performing the diverse functions as regulator and to a limited extent as a developer has overstretched the LLDA and resulted in its inability to fully accomplish its original mandate as a development agency. This is evident in its current business strategy and financial profile, thus the need to delineate and segregate its regulatory and planning-developmental functions. Likewise, the LLDA has realized that building institutional capacities for undertaking large-scale infrastructure projects in the region requires that the regulatory and policy-making function of LLDA is balanced with a strong, but segregated, development function. This was the starting point of the institutional re-engineering program. Previous studies identified potential investments of around US\$381 million to maintain the environmental quality in the Laguna de Bay area through dredging, embankments, sanitary landfills, and sewage and treatment plants. LLDA urgently needs to develop the capability to leverage and facilitate private sector participation in necessary large-scale environmental and water-related infrastructure projects in the lake area.

Source: Laguna de Bay Brief

The Role of Local governments

21 22

20

23 Local governments play a critical role in lake basin management, since localized issues 24 can often be handled best at local level. In addition, local authorities are often the most 25 accountable to the public and may be the best placed to facilitate stakeholder dialogues at the operational level. They are the most capable of responding to local needs in 26 27 addressing the economic, social, and environmental challenges of sustainable 28 development. Their decisions on land use zoning, transportation, construction, public health, ecological zoning, solid waste management, and industrial incentives all affect 29 30 water resources.

31

Few of the 28 lakes surveyed are managed entirely by a local government, however. The 32 33 Bhoj Wetland and Lake Baringo are controlled by a municipal and a county authority 34 respectively, while lakes Biwa, Chilika and Toba are under intermediate levels of 35 government. The remainder are managed at the national or international levels. Local governments cannot manage all lake basins problems. Many problems, because of 36 37 the transmissivity of lakes, affect a wider area than just one local government

38 jurisdiction. In addition, local governments often lack jurisdictional authority and

- resources to address context-specific issues, including a limited ability to bring other
 levels of government to the table; (the financial and human resources to implement
- properly sustainability initiatives; and the necessary political will, due to the brevity of
 the electoral or administrative cycle.
- 5

In practice, the lake and its watershed often occupy a low position on the priority list of
local governments, especially in developing countries. Indeed, local governments can be
major sources of lake degradation if they are indifferent to urban sewage, diversion of
funds, support of activities that generate pollution as well as revenue and employment.
In many countries, local governments are highly politicized and just as hierarchical as
distant agencies, making consensus-building very difficult on cross-sectoral issue (Box
3.3).

12 13

Box 3.3. Involving local governments in an integrated policy at Laguna de Bay

Lakeshore municipalities challenged the Laguna Lake Development Authority over the right to issue fishery permits, especially for the lucrative fish cages and fish pens. In 1995, the Supreme Court ruled in favor of the LLDA, noting that the lake "cannot be subjected to fragmented concepts of management policies where lakeshore local government units exercise exclusive dominion over specific portions of the lake water...The implementation of a cohesive and integrated lake water resource management policy...is necessary to conserve, protect and sustainably develop Laguna de Bay." This decision re-iterated LLDA's authority over permitting. It is also interesting to note that, since the permitting program began, the LLDA has maintained a revenue sharing policy of the fees with the local governments. This has undoubtedly contributed to the acceptance of the program at the local level

Source: Laguna de Bay Brief

15 Evolution of integrated lake basin management

16

14

As lake uses increase in scope and magnitude, conflicts increase, and the benefits of 17 some sort of integrated management of the lake becomes more evident. Stakeholder 18 19 institutions evolve, often working out new ways of sharing the resource and avoiding 20 present and potential conflict, especially internally but also with other sectors. For 21 example, moratoriums on fishing have been imposed in Lakes Baringo and Naivasha to 22 allow depleted breeding grounds to recover; some agricultural drainage in Lake Biwa is 23 treated and recycled to avoid unwanted scrutiny of a highly protected sector; and the 24 horticulturalists of Lake Naivasha have responded to pressures from EU consumers and 25 the Lake Naivasha Riparian Association to adopt state-of-the-art techniques for pollution 26 control. 27

28 Institutions tend to arise and evolve for developmental needs, but can transform 29 themselves into effective preservers of the lake (Box 3.4). The Laguna Lake Development 30 Authority began with a resource development focus, but the national environmental 31 agenda quickly began to assert itself in its operations. Shiga Prefecture shifted the Lake Biwa Comprehensive Development Plan upon its first renewal in 1982 from its initially 32 almost exclusive focus on developmental projects towards environmentally-friendly public 33 works, such as a wide-area sewerage system and a large infrastructure for irrigation. The 34 prefecture then went beyond the Plan to establish research and educational facilities such 35 as the Lake Biwa Research Institute, the International Lake Environment Committee, the 36 37 Lake Biwa Museum and Shiga Prefectural University. 38

Box 3.4. Great Lakes: A large institutional infrastructure, evolving over a century

The experience of the Great Lakes indicates that formal lake management institutions need to evolve to remain relevant. Beginning with the establishment of the International Joint Commission (IJC) to implement the International Boundary Waters Treaty of 1909 between the United States and the United Kingdom (for Canada), a considerable 'institutional infrastructure' for Great Lakes resource management has been created through laws, treaties, conventions, compacts and formal agreements. The principal stakeholders of these formal institutions are the governments involved, both federal and state or provincial.

The IJC was established as an independent body to advise and make recommendations on problems ("references") given to them by the governments and has been a pioneer in identifying emerging environmental problems, such as nonpoint source pollution and the effect of phosphorus on lake eutrophication. Initially, the IJC investigations only held public hearings on specific topics; otherwise, they were carried out in private because only the governments could give permission to release 'internal communications... by boards, committees'. With the 1972 Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement between the United States and Canada, the IJC opened up to more public involvement in its very effective PLUARG (Pollution from Land Use Activities Reference Group) activities. It also assumed responsibility for monitoring pollution along the lakes, identifying 43 hot spots (Areas of Concern, or AOCs). Each AOC requires a Remedial Action Plan (RAP), and remains listed until both countries agree on its removal. By and large, the IJC has been able to retain its independence, although critical monitoring functions were assumed by the member governments after 1989, with mixed results.

New stresses, both from changes in stakeholders' rights (Native Americans) and from problems arising from our of the lake basin (zebra mussels, airborne lead), pose severe challenges to which present institutional infrastructure must adapt.

2

Trained and experienced staff play a critical role. Putting resources into building the 3 4 conservation agenda and capacity of existing sectoral institutions may strengthen their commitment and capacity for dealing with resource issues directly, or in cooperation with 5 environmental bodies. This may require modifications in personnel procedures, however, 6 7 in organizations where trained staff are regularly reassigned. This has been identified as 8 a problem in Lake Malawi and Lake Nakuru, and is probably guite widespread. On the 9 other hand, there are cases such as Lake Chilika where highly qualified people with 10 excellent networking skills are brought in to improve environmental capacity and enlist 11 the support of stakeholders at all levels.

12

13 Coordinating agencies rely on sectoral institutions to be effective. For example, Lake 14 Constance relies on individual sectoral institutions that are sufficiently coordinated to integrate the management of lake conservation. The adaptability of existing institutions 15 16 are essential to the successful management for Lake Constance. Also important have 17 been the existence of infrastructure in place (especially sewerage) that allows upgrading 18 at modest cost, a high level of social capital exhibited in the very strong research agenda of citizen groups and NGOs, a heritage of international cooperation, and the compulsion 19 20 of EU directives.

21

It is helpful if political and basin boundaries are the same. Lake Biwa and its watershed
are almost entirely coincident with the boundaries of Shiga Prefecture. Between 1972
and 1997, its development was governed under the Lake Biwa Comprehensive
Development Plan, which distributed public works projects among existing agencies.

26

28

27 The governance framework for lake basin management

29 The enabling environment

30

Whether formal or informal, water management institutions operate within a larger context, or governance framework. Effective lake basin management requires that this framework create an "enabling environment" that provides the conditions for institutions to be effective. A governance framework includes laws and regulations both as they are formulated and as they are implemented as well as a judiciary to fairly adjudicate

disputes (see Box 3.5). It also includes certain cultural endowments, such as those that

- 1 promote trust or impute non-market values to lakes. International lakes must deal with
- 2 questions of national sovereignty that make coordinated management more difficult than
- 3 for national lakes.
- 4

Box 3.5. Public Interest Litigation in India

A major development in stopping the continuing degradation of lakes in India has been the involvement of the judiciary, sometimes at the highest level, the Supreme Court. Indian law courts have been extremely proactive on the issue of environmental protection. Groups of affected people and third parties have been filing public interest litigations (PIL) in courts across the country seeking remedial actions, especially for highly pollutec urban lakes.

The Supreme Court, in a PIL in the case of Badal Khol and Surajkund lakes in Haryana state, held that the precautionary principle is part of the law of the land, and limited construction activity in the near vicinity of the lakes. Although PILs have generally helped in restoration of lakes, there are opposite instances, as was the case of the Rabindra Sarovar lake in West Bengal, where the PIL sought to legalize encroachment onto the lake.

(From M.S. Reddy and N.V.V. Char, Management of Lakes in India)

5 6

Transparency and accountability

7
8 Especially in developing countries, a pervasive lack of accountability and transparency
9 characterizes governance at all levels, even in democracies. Sophisticated laws, plans
10 and policies are not implemented. Information, when it exists, is hoarded as an
11 instrument of power. Under these circumstances, it is especially imperative to involve
12 stakeholders (Chapter 5).

- 14 Customary rights
- 15

16 Sometimes the local government is able to assume the functions of lake management, 17 especially where its boundaries coincide closely with a significant portion of the lake basin. Informal or "customary" institutions can manage user priorities or transfer rules, 18 use rights for seasonal migrants, self-initiated lobby groups, and informal cooperatives. 19 20 Outside investors using formal property claims sometimes appropriate resources used 21 under customary rights, possibly contributing to the impoverishment of artisanal fishers and farmers. This type of conflict is very common in developing country cases, especially 22 23 with the spread of fishpen culture in Asia. At Chilika Lake, arbitrary changes in traditional fishing rights to promote fishpen investments led to violent clashes with police that drew 24 25 national attention to the lake.

26

In other cases, pressures are from migrating populations rather than heavily capitalized
outsiders. Traditional use rights of seasonal migrants in Lake Tonle Sap are under
challenge as customary migrants overstay their welcome and entirely new populations
come into the area. Similar conflicts between ethnic communities are widespread in
Africa.

32

Customary rules can transcend post-colonial national boundaries. In the Lake Chad area
pre-colonial rules are still in place to some extent for establishing the order of use
priorities in the face of dramatic changes in size and form of the lake. In this
circumstance, the lingering application of colonial Roman Law in assigning free access to

- 37 groundwater overlying landowners is retrogressive.
- 38
- 39 The necessity of harmonization
- 40

Differences in regulations and their enforcement can lead to perverse economic behaviors
for transboundary lakes. One of the most pressing needs in many international lakes
such as Lakes Victoria and Kariba is to harmonize national regulations in areas such as
fishery and pollution control. Harmonization is not necessarily the same as uniformity.
The intention is to ensure that there are not conflicts between the laws and regulations
across national borders, rather than to ensure that the laws are identical.

At the same time, harmonization should be tailored to the specific lake as opposed to the needs of the riparian nations. Laws are too often formulated for the entire nation, and may not be appropriate for a transboundary lake. Nigeria is important to the Lake Chad basin, but the basin is not dominant in Nigerian policy thinking. It is necessary for basin states to enable within-basin stakeholders to harmonize rules among themselves across borders, but not necessarily with other regions in each country.

9 Towards effective institutions

10

8

1

Based on the experiences detailed in the lake briefs, a number of lessons have been
learned about creating effective institutions. Realizing that institutions may be private,
communal, national or international, however, these lessons have to be applied at the
appropriate scale and manner for each particular lake.

15

- 16 The key lessons are contained in the following bullet points:
- Effective management requires a core. Institutional effectiveness is stronger when the lake is closer to an economic or political-administrative center of a nation.
 "Marginal" lakes receive marginal attention. International cooperation may be particularly difficult to achieve when a lake is marginal to one of the major basin countries, as Lake Victoria is to Burundi or Lake Chad to Nigeria.
- Scientific institutions often make a good starting point for lake-wide dialogue.
 Informal peer groups at the technical level can be a key factor in creating
 supportive networks, especially across national borders. Whether it is the Great
 Lakes or Lake Biwa, resident research institutes and centers for intellectual
 exchange provide not only knowledge creation and dissemination but also neutral
 fora where people can develop a common discourse.
- Effective management builds on existing institutions. Developing a lake-wide
 institution is best done by building on a powerful sectoral institution, often
 catalyzed by a crisis. Institutions usually exist already at the sectoral level. For
 example, fisheries management bodies already exist in many of the lakes studied
 in this report. Efforts to undertake cross-sectoral management of lakes should
 build on these institutions, as problems arise.
- Effective management is not afraid to act. It may be difficult to determine
 whether certain management actions will be successful or not. Nevertheless, the
 Lake Briefs show that management institutions can be very effective if they are
 seen to be taking action to remedy problems, even when there is little reliable
 knowledge available. This is what the Lake Laguna Development Authority calls a
 "ready, fire, aim" approach.
- Effective integrated management focuses on specific problems. The best lake
 management experiences often focus on a limited number of critical points, such
 as the removal of phosphorus from detergents in Lake Biwa, the biological
 treatment of water hyacinth in critical bays in Lake Victoria, the addition of
 tertiary sewage treatment in Lake Constance, or the identification of 43 hot spots
 (Areas of Concern, or AOCs) in the Great Lakes. Public support will follow from
 these initial successes.
- 48

Chapter 4: Identifying Effective Policies: Incentives and 1 Regulations 2

3

Key Lessons Learned about Policy

- It is not possible to implement major policy changes if people do not understand the long-term benefits
- Point source control policies are often a first step because implementation is easier to do and results • are easier to see than with broader, longer-term policy changes.
- Effective policy making usually requires a mix of different policies. •
- Effective policies have to be tailored to the situation in each lake basin.
- Without proper monitoring and enforcement, policies become worthless. • Designating a lake basin as a protected area does not necessarily stop exploitation.

4

5 Policy-making is an art, not a science, and changing specific policies for improved lake 6 management is part of a multi-step process. After identifying the parameters of the 7 lake's physical system (see Chapter 1), and the roles of the various stakeholders within the system (see Chapters 2 and 5), the decision maker considers what is happening at 8 9 present, what alternatives are feasible, and the overall objectives of improved 10 management. These are the "goals" of improved lake management and the objectives 11 toward which new, specific policies are put in place.

12

13 Changing policies is an integral part of introducing effective solutions and making a

14 difference in a lake basin. Policies can be considered at several different levels. The

15 broader policy framework includes many dimensions—general goals for lake basin

management, the supporting legal framework and institutional arrangements (both 16

17 formal and informal), and the state of scientific knowledge. In addition, policies (or policy

responses) are needed to address specific issues and change behavior. These policy tools 18

19 often take the form of economic signals or incentives, as well as rules and regulations,

20 and are designed to create specific outcomes. This latter set of policies are the focus of this chapter. People-centered policies, those that rely on public information and 21

22 involvement, are equally important and are discussed in Chapter 5.

23

24 In some cases (the easy ones) the needed improvements are largely engineering

25 investments, and the main problem is in securing financial resources (money!!).

26 Engineering and infrastructure solutions are discussed in Chapter 6 and Financing is

27 discussed in Chapter 8. However, in most cases, improved management usually means improved management of people and their actions, and the introduction 28

29 of policies to change their behavior.

30

31 As discussed earlier, in almost all cases the users of lake resources (the stakeholders) are 32 doing what they feel is best for them given the prices, policies and institutions that they 33 face. Accordingly, any change in the patterns of resource use (whether it is a change in 34 agricultural practices in the upper watershed or fishing in the lake, for example) will 35 require someone doing something different, and taking an action that they would not normally take. In fact, since we assume that all individuals are already "doing the best 36 that they can" any change in their behavior must be induced. Consequently, various 37 38 policy tools are used to "change the rules of the game." This is the role of new policies or institutions-to make changes in the signals that lake resource users perceive and react 39 40 to, and thereby improving the use of the lake and its resources.

41

42 The process of changing policies is never easy. As seen in most of the lake briefs, there 43 are almost always winners and losers, and there are usually additional investment costs associated with what is being proposed. Different interest groups may require quite 44 45 different policies, and in some cases where lake management is a regional or

46 international responsibility, this further complicates the process of designing and

- 47 implementing new policies. Hence effective policy change requires planning, political
- 48 commitment, and the financial and economic resources to implement change.

A Not-so-simple Example

3 4 The 28 case studies provide many useful examples of this challenge. In the case of 5 Laguna de Bay, for example, the government's management approach has been flexible 6 and has evolved over time as the management authorities have had to both respond to 7 new challenges (e.g. expansion of fish pen operations and shoreline industrial 8 development) as well as search for new sources of funding. See Box 4.1 for a discussion 9 of this process, and how the Laguna Lake Development Authority has tried a variety of 10 different policy approaches to address the lake's problems. As explained in Box 4.1, the LLDA has shown the wisdom of trying to make a difference and fine-tuning policies as 11 experience was gained. This view is summarized in their informal motto of "Ready-Fire-12 13 Aim"! 14

Box 4.1. Laguna de Bay and LLDA—an evolving policy response

When the Laguna Lake Development Authority (LLDA) was set up in 1966 to help manage Laguna de Bay and its water quality problems, the approach used was a fairly traditional Command and Control (plus capital investments) approach. Initially funded by an annual allocation of one million pesos from the National Government, over time the LLDA has become much more self-financed through a combination of regulatory fees and fines, laboratory services, and resource user fees (aquaculture and water abstraction). As the LLDA gained experience, it broadened its mandate and set of activities to take a more proactive approach in managing the lake as an economic as well as an ecological asset.

A particular area of interest has been the development and management of the fish pen/ aquaculture industry, and the conflicts with traditional fishing populations and issues of changes in water quality. Programs were developed to both support fish pen development as well as alternative income generating programs for lakeshore communities. Conflicts among competing uses of the lake's resources grew: for example, the area covered by fish ponds increased from less than 40 hectares in the 1970s to more than 30,000 hectares in 1983, reducing the area available for open fishing and impeding lake navigation. Different government ministries sometimes worked at cross-purposes within the lake.

The LLDA has also evolved in its response and more recently has tried to blend economic instruments (that either use or create markets) with command and control policies. Implementation of the Environmental User Fee System (EUFS) began in 1997 and combined a fixed fee and a variable fee to attack the problem of water pollution from lakeshore industries and communities. The fixed fee component is based on volume of discharge and covers administrative costs. The variable fee is based on whether discharges are above or below the BOD standard of 50 mg/l. Implementation began slowly and focused on a small set of industrial polluters (who were, however, responsible for up to 90% of the total organic load being discharged into the lake). The EUFS was gradually expanded to cover other firms, residential areas and commercial establishments.

The EUFS use of fixed and variable fees helps to correct a problem commonly encountered with discharge standard based fees—the later encourage dilution of discharges (to meet the standard) while the fixed fees will tax the increase in quantity of wastewater released. The LLDA still has CAC functions like registering all units that discharge into the lake, and monitoring and enforcement are always issues.

In another innovative approach a fish pen fee (basically a licensing fee) was set whereby monies are collected from the fish pen operators and then shared between the lakeshore communities (more if they have fish pens in their area) and the LLDA for general operating expenses. The fee is currently about US\$120 per hectare per year, and up to 35% of the money collected goes to lakeshore communities and the balance to LLDA.

The LLDA is an excellent example of a lake management authority that began life as a government mandated (and funded) regulatory agency and has evolved into a much more market-responsive agency willing to try different policy approaches to address evolving problems. In fact, the LLDA applies all four approaches in varying degrees.

LLDA's willingness to innovate is seen in the interactions with fish pen operators—clearly a high value operation (and consequently one that has a substantial ability to pay) but also an industry that contributes to environmental problems in the lake. Competition for lake resources between the fish pen operators and traditional lakeshore communities is an on-going concern and one that the LLDA has tried to address with a number of different policies including fish pen regulation and creation of new economic activities on the shore. The willing to try new approaches attitude of the LLDA is well summarized in their philosophy of "Ready—Fire—Aim". They are willing to start with actions and are happy to fine tune later. Put another way, in the world of policy formulation it is important that we "don't let the perfect [policy] be the enemy of the good."

1 Identifying Potential Policy Responses

2 3 As mentioned earlier, policies can be thought of at many different levels, including 4 changing institutions or legal frameworks, or taking legislative action. As used here, 5 however, policy response refers to a narrower set of discrete actions taken by 6 governments or other management organizations in reaction to some problem 7 and to produce some desired outcome, often by changing some price signal or setting certain standards or norms. These types of policies can also be thought of as 8 a combination of economic signals and incentives (market-based policies) and rules and 9 10 regulations (command-and-control policies). 11 12 In effect, this definition of policy making is an example of the "Monday morning rule"-13 whereby the decision maker, after attending a workshop and thinking about lake management challenges in the context of the analysis and approaches presented in this 14 15 report, has to decide what can be done differently when he or she returns to the office on Monday morning. Therefore the focus is on **discrete**, often modest changes that can 16 begin to make a difference (while not denying that broader, longer term social and 17 18 institutional change are also an important part of the search for more sustainable lake 19 management). Incremental changes are often the first step to effective lake 20 management by making all stakeholders part of the management process and getting 21 their "buy-in" into the process. Modest first steps towards control of industrial pollution in 22 Lake Dianchi in China, for example, laid the foundation for more major interventions over 23 time. 24 25 Although each lake or basin being analyzed will probably require a very specific set of policies to address its own concerns, there are some more general lessons that provide 26 27 useful guidance, both on the types of policies most likely to be effective, and the 28 appropriate mix of policies to be used. 29 30 Decision makers can draw upon an expanding literature on effective policies to manage 31 environmental problems. Although many of the policies were developed for other 32 ecosystems, the principles are very transferable to many of the problems encountered in 33 lake basin management. In a broad review of environmental management polices, four

- broad categories of policies were identified (see Five Years after Rio: innovations in
 environmental policy, World Bank, 1997). These categories are the following:
 36
 - Policies that engage the public (public awareness, voluntary groups, the mass media, others)
 - Command and control type policies (rules and regulations)
 - Policies that use existing markets (and often use price signals)
 - Policies that create markets (and often create price signals).

These categories cover the entire range of policy tools being used at present and 43 44 represent quite different ways of attacking similar problems. The only other intervention 45 commonly used in lake basin management is a technological response such as physical 46 investment in capital works like advanced sewage treatment, dredging and the use of 47 biological agents to control weed growth. These technical responses are an important 48 part of the management package but are not "policies" in the sense used here—they are discussed in Chapter 6. Furthermore, the first category listed above—policies that engage 49 the public—is really a different type of initiative and is appropriately discussed in the 50 51 following chapter on the role of public participation in lake basin management. Each of these remaining three broad classes of policies is now discussed. 52

53

55

37

38

39

40

41

42

54 Rules and Regulations—Command and Control Policies

56 The first broad category of policy tools or instruments commonly employed by 57 governments is the use of regulations and standards. These are often referred to as

1 command and control (CAC) policies. Whether it is a restriction on the use of a certain 2 type of fishing gear, or the setting of an allowable pollution load for industrial or 3 residential effluent, command and control policies are popular with governments because they can specify the desired outcome. Environmental management in the West started 4 5 with a CAC approach, and this helped to create the "policing" mentality about many 6 resource management agencies. Users often felt that governments were there to oversee 7 and police them, rather than work together for improved environmental and economic sustainability. There was an additional attractive feature about CAC type policies. 8 Governments can state that they have strict standards in place and therefore feel like 9 10 they are "doing something" about the problem—even is nothing is being enforced! The 11 former Soviet Union was a classic example where everything was "controlled" by norms 12 or standards, and almost none of the standards were actually enforced. 13 For some goals, in some social settings, command and control policies can be a very 14 15 efficient and effective way to make a difference. For example, to reduce water pollutants in a lake specifying allowable boat engine types (two stroke or four stroke engines, for 16 example) or fuels that may be used may be quite effective in reducing water pollutants. 17 18 Similarly, banning certain pesticides can quickly help reduce water pollution from 19 agricultural return flows. The lake Biwa example mentioned earlier used regulations to 20 control phosphate pollution in the lake. Many developed countries relied heavily on CAC 21 policies in the past, and they were effective in achieving environmental goals. Command 22 and control policies work best when the number of people affected is not too large, and when there is a social acceptance of government-set standards. If "social capital" is weak 23

and enforcement is lax, command and control policies are unlikely to be effective,
 A mixture of CAC policies is often used. To help manage fish stocks in a lake, specifying
 fishing boat size or imposing gear restrictions will have a direct impact on fish catch.
 Other CAC policies for fishery management include

28 29

30

31

32

33

- specifying "closed seasons" when certain species may not be caught,
- assigning allowable catch amounts per species or per period of time, or
 - designating fishing zones for different categories of fishermen or different fisheries.

Note that command and control policies are NOT economic policies-they usually do not 34 ask what are the benefits or costs of any policy (or, more importantly, what the net 35 36 benefits are), they merely specify the desired outcome. As a result, CAC policies can be very inefficient ways to reach many goals. (In this case, "inefficient" means that the 37 chosen policy may be effective in reaching a goal, but at a much higher cost that other 38 policies.) The economic inefficiency occurs since CAC policies do not leave much room for 39 40 negotiation or trades—everyone is expected to follow the same standard. Experience with 41 air pollution reduction in the United States has shown that when polluters have the ability to "trade" pollution reductions, those firms that are more efficient in doing so can often 42 "sell" extra reductions to older or less efficient firms. The net result of this market-based 43 44 approach is that total pollution reduction targets are met but at a considerably lower cost 45 than if each firm had to meet a given target (a traditional command and control approach). When the US wanted to reduce atmospheric sulfur emissions, for example, a 46 tradable guotas approach was used and allowed the overall target to be met at half the 47 48 cost originally estimated to achieve the same reduction. Of course, to implement such an approach requires setting an overall target for pollution reduction and allocating initial 49 firm-level reduction goals before trading begins. 50

51

Finally, command and control policies are often costly to administer and implement. The more finely tuned the CAC policy, the larger the administrative burden in enforcing the policy. In addition, if the policies are aimed at large numbers of individuals (rather than just a handful of individuals) monitoring and enforcement may be impossible. A good example is the difference in enforcing fishery regulations for thousands of artisinal or near-shore fishermen or for a handful of larger operators. In this case neither group may be easy to manage with CAC policies—monitoring or policing a large number of relatively weak artisinal fishermen may be just as ineffective as trying to impose restrictions on a small number of often wealthy or influential large fishing operators. The challenges in Lake Victoria in managing the different groups of competing fishermen illustrate this point.

6

7 Another illustration of the challenge is to try and affect agricultural chemical use by farmers in the upper lake basin. A CAC approach would specify what chemicals are 8 permitted or how they may be applied—and could be almost impossible to enforce and 9 10 monitor. A "blunter" approach is to combine the use of some CAC policies (e.g. ban the 11 import and sale of the most damaging chemicals) with certain market-based policies such 12 as correctly pricing agricultural inputs (removing subsidies) so that there is an incentive 13 to use the input carefully and not over-apply. This happened with fertilizer in Indonesia. In the past, heavily subsidized fertilizer was over-used in rice production, much of the 14 15 fertilizer was wasted and entered water return flows, and this created serious downstream environmental impacts. The government then raised fertilizer prices (a 16 market based policy) largely because the Treasury could no longer afford to pay the 17 18 subsidy. The net result was a sharp decrease in fertilizer use (and the pollution of water 19 that was an associated by-product of excessive fertilizer use in the past) but no decrease 20 in rice production. Farmers just started to use fertilizer, now a more expensive and hence 21 "valuable" input, more carefully!

22

In summary, command and control approaches are more likely to succeed when thefollowing requirements are met:

25 26

27

28

29

30

31

32

- the number of individuals or units to be managed are small or there are easily monitored points e.g. landing beaches or sites for fish catch
- the institutional structure to monitor and enforce sanctions exists and is effective
- there is a reasonable level of "social capital," and individuals and society have respect for government and institutions
 - there is a sense of "shared responsibility" for management of the lake basin and its resources

This is a rather demanding set of requirements and helps explain why in many countries
command and control has been only minimally effective in promoting improved lake
basin management (while still allowing governments to give the impression of having set
many standards and having taken action).

38

In other cases, policies send signals or create incentives/ disincentives to change
behavior. These policies are generally referred to as "market-based incentives" and either
use existing markets or create new markets. Just as with command and control policies
the market-based policies usually require monitoring and institutions to help enforce
them.

- 44
- 45 Policies that Use Existing Markets
- 46

47 Markets and market prices are very powerful senders of signals—a higher price for a food 48 or fish product will cause farmers or fishermen to increase production, a higher price for 49 fuel or inputs will decrease incomes and may cause a shift in technology. Even 50 subsistence farmers and fishermen are affected by market price signals, although the 51 impact may be quite indirect and lagged in time. The policies that use prices to send 52 signals are the most important category of what economists refer to as "market-based 53 incentives" or MBIS.

54

Economists accordingly place a lot of emphasis on "getting the prices right" and the
power of the market (and prices) to change behavior. There are several reasons for this:

1	 Market signals (prices) affect most people and normally do not require direct
2	government intervention once the price has been set
3	 Market signals affect both those who are in the market and those who are only
4	marginally involved
5	 People respond to market signals (prices)
6	 Market signals (prices) can change quite quickly and hence are a fairly responsive
7	policy tool (think of the impacts in changes in the price of fuel or water)
8	 Market signals can be used to both reward good behavior (e.g. a subsidy for use
9	of environmentally friendly equipment), or to punish undesirable behavior (e.g. a
10	tax to discourage over use of a scarce resource or to discourage polluters)
11	 Changes in market prices is a classic way to "internalize environmental
12	externalities", and thus encourage more efficient resource use. A higher price for
13	pesticides, for example, helps the price reflect the costs of pesticide pollution of
14	water, and also encorgaes farmers to use less pesticide and use it more carefully.
15	
16	Having said this, it is usually not a simple political process to introduce these changes.
17	Since the well-being (welfare) of people is being affected, there will always be pressures
18	to resist changes by those who will lose something due to changes in prices. This is
19	natural-no one wants to pay more for anything (e.g. water for drinking or irrigation,
20	fishing permits, waste water discharge permits) even if they agree that the current price
21	is too low-and has some subsidy built into it. The people who receive free or subsidized
22	services (or free access to certain lake resources) almost always feel that the lower price
23	is the "correct" price and will fight efforts to raise the price. Whether they are successful
24 25	or not in preventing efforts to increase prices (or restrict use) often depends on their
25 2(political power. In addition, when those affected are low-income fishermen or farmers,
26	there are important distributional issues about any new burden—can they afford the new
27 28	costs (even if the costs are fully justified)? Are there other groups receiving subsidies
20 29	who could (and should) pay more, and maybe provide a cross-subsidy to lower income resource users? For example, the Lake Naivasha Brief raises interesting questions about
29 30	who benefits from the uses of the lake waters (flower growers, fishermen, traditional
30 31	pastoralists), and who should shoulder what portion of the costs of improved
31 32	management.
ວ∠ ວວ	management.

The one exception where some users may be willing to accept an increase in a charge or 34 price for a previously free or under priced resource is where the user group sees that 35 36 some action or investment is needed or else they will all lose in the future. This form of 37 "enlightened self-interest" is unfortunately less common than one would like, but 38 examples do exist. In Asia for example, both the fish pen operators in Laguna de Bay and the pulp industry in Lake Toba have accepted a new fee/charge in hopes of assuring the 39 40 longer-term financial (and ecological) sustainability of the lake resource and their 41 industry.

42

43 Policies that Create Markets

44

45 Sometimes markets are poorly developed or lacking—this is usually due to poorly defined property rights or where past use was limited and did not put pressure on the 46 47 sustainability of the resource. In a fishery, for example, if the previous levels of catch 48 were below the MSY-maximum sustainable yield-there was no need to regulate or control the catch-there were enough fish for all users. However, with population growth 49 50 or introduction of new technologies (such as bigger boats or more effective fishing gear) 51 this situation often changes. Users begin to compete with one another and the resource 52 begins to degrade. 53

In these cases it may be possible to create a new market and then reap the benefits of market-based policy tools. For example, if the lake fishing industry is an open-access resource (e.g. anyone with a boat can catch fish) it may be possible to *assign property rights* (or catch quotas) to lakeshore communities. The fish have then become an economic commodity and the entitlement holders (those individuals or groups with the property rights or the catch quotas) now own an "economic asset" and have increased interest in and options for managing the fish resource. The newly enfranchised owners of the fish resource may chose to harvest their allotment, sell their quota to another group, or wait until later to harvest their share. This is not unlike what happens when grazing lands or forest lands are changed from communal open-access resources to resources that have identifiable property rights.

8

9 Note that communal resource management can work in some settings (usually where

10 there are smaller, more homogenous groups), but the history of open access fisheries is

full of examples where over fishing resulted in serious degradation of the fish resource.
 Some of the issues of communal management of resources are discussed in Chapters 2

13 14 and 5.

Another type of policy that creates a market is where there is *a new or expanding use*. In many case, for example, sport fishing in lakes has been traditionally unregulated and untaxed. The introduction of "user fees"—a license fee, a per catch charge, a daily admission fee—are all ways that a market can be created. Once the market is created the policy instruments or tools that are used are the same as those found under the third

- 20 category (Policies that Use Existing Markets).
- 21

22 A final example of "market creation" is found in many international lakes or lakes that 23 are designated as Ramsar sites. In these cases the lake basin and its resources have 24 been recognized as having international benefits and international "stakeholders" in their 25 management. This recognition is often accompanied by additional funding to help pay for 26 management and the production of these trans-national benefits. The GEF has been 27 actively funding management of international waters (including lakes) and many bilateral 28 agencies and NGOs help pay for management in specific lakes that yield important 29 biodiversity or other environmental benefits.

30

31 The Policy Matrix

32

33 Policy-making is a creative process and successful policy-making is almost always a 34 combination of several different policy instruments or tools. The institutional framework 35 for implementing new policies is equally crucial. It is not possible (nor desirable) to be 36 prescriptive with respect to which policy is best for each problem. Since policies are 37 designed to affect people and their behavior, what works in one situation may not necessarily work in another. Successful policy implementation depends on many factors-38 39 socio-cultural factors, institutional dimensions, the extent of market development and public confidence in the "system" and various aspects of what economists call "social 40 41 capital" (See Box 4.2). 42

Box 4.2. Social Capital

Social capital is the sum of the beneficial ways that different members of a society interact with one another. If is often the missing ingredient in creating a successful policy intervention. Societies with higher levels of social capital have greater possibilities of reaching co-operative solutions, and using self-discipline to enforce required changes. Social capital is not the same as economic wealth—some poor societies can have a large amount of social capital (especially if the population is fairly homogenous). One characteristic of societies with large amounts of social capital is a "shared vision"— the Costa Rican public's view of the role and importance of the environment is one excellent example. The lack of social capital, in contrast, is often marked with distrust, cynicism, and failure to find co-operative solutions. Unfortunately, in many of the world's lakes (especially those with very mixed, ethnically diverse populations and sharp competition for available resources) social capital is scarce and this makes implementation of new policies very challenging.

		Engaging	the Public		mmand and Co	ntrol	asin Manage Crea	ating Market	
		Information	Public				Property Rights/	Tradable Permits/	International Offset
By s	ector or theme	Disclosure	Participation	Standards	Bans/Quotas	Zoning	Decentralization	Rights	Systems
	Water resources	Lake-based NGO (Victoria)	Public awareness (Chilaka, Biwa)						
	Fisheries								
ement	Land		Fishing management (Laguna)	Licenses (George) Gill net size (Victoria) Gear standards (Peipsi)	Fishing moratorium (Baringo, Naivasha)	Fish pen zones (Laguna)	Fish pen licenses (Laguna) Fishing concession (Ohrid)		
Resource Management	Management	Village level environmental conservation groups (Nakuru)				Land use control (Naivasaha, Dianchi, Toba)			
	Sustainable Agriculture		5						
	Biodiversity		Flower growers co- operative (Naivasha)						
				Lake level control (Toba)					
	Water Pollution								
				Water quality standards (Dianchi)		Detergent bans (Champlain, Biwa)	Land use planning (Dianchi)		
Pollution Control	Solid Waste			Relocate landfill (Nakuru)					
	Hazardous Waste/Toxic Chemicals					Land use controls (Dianchi)			

1 Table 4.1. The Policy Matrix—Selected Applications to Lake Basin Management

1 Table 4.1. (cont.) The Policy Matrix

		Using Mar Environmental Taxes on				User Fees for		
By sector or theme		Subsidy Reduction	Emissions	Inputs	Products	Natural resources	Services	Targeted Subsidies
	Water resources		21110010110				Payments	Raise water level
	Fisherian						downstream water users (Biwa)	(Sevan, Aral Sea) Improve water quality (Aral Sea)
	Fisheries							
gement					Fish levy (Victoria) Fish pen fee (Laguna, Ohrid) Fish catch (Ohrid)	Fishing licenses (Champlain)		
Resource Management	Land Management							
Reso						Environ- mental mgt fee (Toba)		Reforestation (Dianchi)
	Sustainable Agriculture							Watershed areas (Naivasha?)
	Biodiversity							
	Webs Dellader							
	Water Pollution	Fertilizers	Industrial					
-		subsidy reduction (Peipsi,)	pollutants taxes (Laguna, Dianchi)					Sewage/ wastewate treatment (Great Lakes, Dianchi)
Pollution Control	Solid Waste							
	Hazardous Waste/Toxic Chemicals							

Policies have to be tested and proved in the field and it is difficult to predict in advance whether or not a policy will be completely successful. The case studies provide many examples where well-intentioned policies were ineffective, or where policies successfully used in one setting failed in another.

6 7

1

One aid to policy making is the use of a Policy Matrix—a simple device that lists the main 8 potential policies on the columns (grouped by the five major policy types introduced 9 earlier - engaging the public, rules and regulations, using markets, creating markets, 10 and engineering solution)) and the major management issues on the rows. The different 11 cells of the matrix are then filled in with examples drawn from the case studies and the 12 literature. See Table 4.1 for an example of a Policy Matrix and selected examples of its 13 application to lake resources management. The Policy Matrix draws from examples in this chapter as well as the chapter on People (Chapter 5). 14 15 For example, the common problem of over fishing can be addressed by any number of 16 different policies. Although what is likely to work in any particular lake will depend on the 17

different policies. Although what is likely to work in any particular lake will depend on the situation in that lake, a set of potential policies that could be considered to control over fishing include the following:

20 21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

- Auctioning of pre-determined catch guotas (using a market), or
- Assignment of new catch quotas that can then be bought and sold (creating a market), or
 - Restrictions on the types of fishing gear allowed, fishing effort, or allowable catch (command and control approaches), or
- Public information campaigns to encourage fishermen to limit or restrict their catch (public information/ involvement).

29 Obviously the selection of an appropriate policy, or **mix of policies**, is likely to very sitespecific. See Box 4.3 for an example from Lake Dianchi or using a mix of policies to 30 31 address water pollution. Even when command and control approaches are chosen to 32 address a problem, public information and consultation may be essential in gaining 33 acceptance of (and compliance with) the new policies. Since policies basically are designed to change human behavior, we must never lose sight of the importance of 34 35 properly consulting on and explaining the new policies if they are to be successfully 36 introduced. Those societies that have gained recognition as being "environmentally friendly"-Costa Rica is one example-have been able to do this largely through public 37 education and participation, and obtaining political support at the highest levels of 38 government. Otherwise improved environmental management will always be everyone's 39 40 second (or third) priority.

Box 4.3. Lake Dianchi, China-A mix of policies to improve lake water quality

Water pollution was a major problem in Lake Dianchi in China. Although Kunming, the capital, obtained its primary water supply from the Song Hua Ba reservoir, Dianchi was an important water source for Kunming in dry years as well as serving industry and agriculture. Pollution came from sewage, industrial effluents, irrigation return flow and storm run-off. The municipal government responded with a combination of policies-strengther administration and enforcement of laws and regulations, and new investments totaling more than 2.1 billion yuan (about \$250 million). The investments were supported in part by a World Bank loan. Large engineering investments were made in sewers and water treatment facilities, and industrial polluters began to meet discharge standards.

Still, numerous old industries remained important sources of pollution. A pollution levy system had previously been introduced into China and was being applied in the basin along with the discharge standards under which industries were charged a penalty if their discharges exceeded the discharge standards. The charges provided an incentive for industries to take steps to control their pollution. They were assisted in making pollution reducing investments by government loans and grants, funded in part by the revenues collected from the pollution levies, as well as from additional government funds for environmental protection. This "carrot and stick" approach, combining discharge standards, pollution charges, and loans for pollution-reducing investments, has been used in many locations to help encourage industries to reduce their pollution.

In Dianchi progress has been reported in reducing pollution in the lake. Compared with 1995, by the year 2000 industrial wastewater discharged was reduced by 60%, COD was reduced by 80%, and soot, dust and SO2 were all significantly reduced. These benefits, largely due to capital investments and management improvements, have been supported by an active program of citizen's involvement and public dissemination of water quality information. In order to help repay loans for the capital improvements and their operation and maintenance, the city also began to charge user fees via water charges, and fees for wastewater treatment and domestic solid waste disposal. The management challenge remains since Kunming is growing rapidly and is the economic hub of the province. Still the example of management of Lake Dianchi illustrates the application of a number of different policy tools to work together towards the longer-term goal of improved lake water quality.

2

Lessons of Past Experience: Increasing the chances for successful policy implementation

category and another from another category)---and the many possible ways to achieve 7 8 any given objective—what suggestions can be made for effective policy design? Based on 9 considerable worldwide experience with implementing environmental-management 10 policies, five broad lessons have been learned about what is likely to make a successful 11 policy package. Again, one cannot be prescriptive but successful interventions in many environmental management areas indicate that successful (e.g. effective) programs often 12 share these characteristics: 13 14 Build "political will". Without the support of the general public and the political 15 establishment it is usually impossible to implement effective management. Whether this 16 is done by grass-root level efforts, or a carefully developed public information campaigns, 17 18 the creation of interest in and commitment to improved lake basin management is an

Given the "Chinese menu" approach to policy making (selecting one policy from this

- 19 essential component of improved management. Often referred to as "political will", this 20 merely means that governments and management authorities are committed to take 21 actions and enforce changed policies.
- 22

23 Governments rarely lead with respect to improved environmental management—they 24 usually follow demands from the public. Once the general public is committed to change, 25 it is a powerful incentive for governments and management authorities to take actions 26 and enforce changed policies. Accordingly, the role of an informed and involved public is 27 essential in creating the "enabling framework" for improved lake basin management. 28 Active citizen involvement has helped create political will to take action in lakes as 29 diverse as Biwa, Sevan, Constance or the Great Lakes.

30

Achieve financial sustainability. Successful programs usually generate some or all of 31 32 the revenues needed for their management. Fortunately a number of potential policies 33 have the attractive feature of helping reach an environmental or economic objective

while also generating resources (e.g. money!) that can be used to pay for management.
 Examples include the use of "user fees" or other use-based charges. For example,

3 expanding lake-based recreation and the implementation of a user fee can help put

4 management on a self-financing basis. Some of these approaches are discussed in5 Chapter 8 on financing.

6

7 As mentioned earlier, there are serious sustainability questions about management 8 programs that are entirely dependent on either outside funds or the use of subsidies. If 9 local financial support (e.g. income) is not developed, when the external source of 10 funding ends, so may the management program. There are too many examples of lake 11 management initiatives or research programs that lasted only as long as the external 12 funding. External resources should therefore play more of a catalytic role rather than 13 an implementing role. A number of the case studies illustrate this point. 14 15 Ensure administrative sustainability. Linked to the financial issue is the administrative and institutional requirement needed to implement any new set of policies. 16 Effective policies have to fit within the institutional capabilities that exist, or the new 17 18 policies have to provide sufficient resources to develop and strengthen institutions. 19 Command and control polices (e.g. regulations) may be particularly demanding with 20 respect to institutions – both for monitoring and imposing any needed sanctions. Again, 21 experience around the world illustrates the difficulty in building institutions that are 22 effective and sustainable—and this is increasingly difficult when the scale of the institutional responsibility increase. Localized institutions may be easier to set up and 23 24 maintain than regional, or international institutions.

25

26 Build effective constituencies for change. In addition to the broader issue of building 27 "political will" for change, managing lake basin resources usually means managing various groups of people, often with quite different interests. As pointed out by Carpenter 28 29 and Cottingham "the fundamental problem of lake restoration is an economic mismatch: 30 those who cause the problem do not benefit sufficiently from the remediation." Therefore, 31 building a sense of "community" and ownership among the various "stakeholders" is essential if new policies are to be implemented. A strict enforcement-only approach 32 (basically a command and control approach) is unlikely to be successful, especially in the 33 longer term. Lake management, since it often involves large numbers of users, many of 34 whom are poor or "marginalized" members of society, is especially challenging. This point 35 36 is well illustrated by many of the case studies.

37

38 Actively work towards policy integration. Policy integration means that different policies in different sectors of the economy need to work together to obtain the desired 39 40 objectives. While this is a simple statement to make, actually practicing it requires that 41 analysts, planner and decision makers explicitly consider the external impacts of their 42 more narrow sectoral policies. For example, attempts to improve lake water quality are hurt when agricultural development policies designed to increase grain production 43 44 provide subsidized fertilizer or agricultural chemicals in the upper watershed, thereby 45 promoting increased chemical use and increased grain production (a good thing) but resulting in increased chemical inflows into the lake and reduced water quality (a bad 46 47 thing). 48

- The focus on the role of science and technology in this report (see Chapter 6 and 7) helps inform this debate. Policy integration is never easy since it requires different parts of government or the management structure to change what they would normally do. Although the higher objective is "improved lake management", the direct implication at the sectoral level may be to decrease output (c.f. the agriculture example given above).
- 55 In addition, if policy integration within a country is difficult, the problems are
- 56 compounded when the lake is an international lake and lake management must
- 57 incorporate more than one country and many different government entities. The Great

1 Lakes Commission of the United States and Canada illustrates the slow, but quite

2 successful, evolution of an international management regime. The numerous difficulties

3 in implementing improved management in Lake Victoria, in contrast, illustrate the

4 remaining challenges.

5 6

Policies, Policy Tools and Governance

7 8 This chapter has focused on policy tools (how one gets something done) that are used 9 after one has decided on more general policies (what one wants to accomplish). Linking 10 policies and policy tools is the whole issue of governance and institutions (who will get 11 something done). As discussed in Chapter 3 on institutions and governance, creating 12 effective governance institutions is one of the major challenges of development. And lake 13 basin management, given the diverse set of stakeholders in most lake basins with often 14 conflicting interests, is one of the more difficult governance challenges. 15

16 Chapter 5 discussed the role of participation and people in improved lake basin

17 management. As the chapter stated forcefully, involving people is not an option in lake

18 management, it is essential. However, all of the issues discussed up to now, including the

19 role of people, are necessary but not sufficient conditions for improved lake basin

20 management if taken one by one. Chapter 3 on institutions and governance shows how

21 these different concerns can be linked and made to work together.

Chapter 5: Involving People: Values, Education and Participation

Key Lessons Learned about People This chapter needs a complete re-write. Material from Chapter 4 on involving people appears at the end and needs to be integrated or put back into Chapter 4.The following lessons may emerge after re-write... Good policy must reflect the desires of the people. (People supply endpoint) Policies developed without participation of stakeholders cannot be effectively implemented. One key way of preventing lake value degradation is to internalize social norms into people's behavior through education. Awareness raising can go a long way in tackling lake problems. • Relevant stakeholders include those with a right, those at risk and those with responsibility. (Or, not everyone is a relevant stakeholder.) Reliance on civil society to reflect the will of society as a whole shortcuts the democratic process and ٠ gives faction dangerous power. 3 4 Managing lakes means managing people. In fact, one of the most difficult elements of 5 effective lake management is the shift from considering "people" as a homogeneous and passive citizenry that "receives governance," to one recognizing "people" as active 6 participants in the process of lake management. The lake briefs contain many examples 7 8 of engineering solutions that were only partially effective – and for which it was necessary to involve people to achieve the management goals. A basic conclusion, 9 10 therefore, is that behavioral change at the individual, household and community levels is 11 essential, and that "involving people" is an essential, not optional, part of effective lake 12 management. 13 Involving people for effective lake management is not a new concept. The World Lake 14 Vision stated that: 15 16 17 "Citizens and other stakeholders should be encouraged to participate meaningfully in identifying and resolving critical lake problems." 18 19 20 Involving people (so-called public participation) provides individuals and groups with a forum for informing decision-makers about their views. It focuses primarily on involving, 21 22 informing and consulting the public in planning, management and other decision-making activities. In fact, of all the policy tools available to facilitate effective lake management 23 24 (see Chapter 4), decision-makers most often underestimate the potential of those policy 25 tools that involve the public. This is in part because the public participation process is 26 more bottom-up and consultative, while the traditional decision-making and policymaking framework is top-down and dictated, usually by governmental entities. The 27 challenge, therefore, is to make the involvement of people "meaningful," and to also 28 29 develop mechanisms for resolving conflicts when consultation alone is not sufficient. The 30 rhetoric is clear: Effective lake basin management ideally should involve all citizens and 31 stakeholders in the process. As noted in Chapter 7, one of the requirements for 32 meaningful public participation is to provide the information and data needed to make the public aware of the magnitude of given lake problems, and the public's role in both 33 34 causing and solving them, as well as the ultimate environmental and socioeconomic 35 consequences if the problems are ignored. Fortunately, the various lake briefs, as well as the results of three regional workshops, support this principle and provide insight as to 36 37 how to begin to put it into practice. 38 39 The lake briefs show that local communities and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) 40 are among the stakeholders that can significantly affect the outcome of management efforts in lake basins. They demonstrate that active community participation also can be 41 42 vital to reducing poverty and achieving social equity and sustainable development in lake

- 43 basin management.
- 44

1 Who are the "People"?

2 3 Different stakeholders are involved in different phases of the lake management process, 4 and this stakeholder participation takes place at different levels of governance-5 community, local, national or international, or a mix of these. Various methods, ranging 6 from information sharing to empowerment, can be used to match the different 7 circumstances, capacities and needs of lake stakeholders. It is logical, therefore, to ask who are the "people" (the public) to be involved in lake management? A broad definition 8 is that the public comprises the people within a country or locality, or a community within 9 10 a specified region. It typically comprises people of diverse, sometimes conflicting, 11 interests and attitudes, as well as groups of people with a common interest. Relevant 12 groups include drainage basin 'citizens', businessmen and industrialists, farmers and 13 agriculturalists, environmentalists, non-governmental organizations, international organizations and professional societies, funding agencies and even governmental 14 15 entities in some cases. For the purposes of this report, the public is taken to mean all those people and groups with an interest in the supply, use, management and/or 16 conservation of lakes, whatever their individual views, complementary or antagonistic. 17

18

19 To this end, principal lake stakeholders include the following:

20

21 Farmers and Agriculturalists

In many parts of the world, productive farming requires irrigation, and farmers were
among the largest water users in 7 of the 28 lake basins. Lake Baikal is the most striking
example in this study of the significant human health and ecosystem effects of excessive
water abstractions on the lake and its basin. Because agriculture uses substantial
amounts of fertilizers and pesticides, which can seriously degrade lake water quality,
water awareness programs typically target farmers to improve agricultural management
practices.

30

31 Business and Industry

32

Every society faces trade-offs between the production of things people need or want, and
the waste generated as a result of the production. The resulting water quality
degradation has both human and ecosystem health implications. Further, parastatal
hydroelectric power companies constructed the two modern dams in this study (Tucurui,
Kariba). Dams also had a major effect on Lakes Ohrid and Toba, where major rivers were
re-directed to flow into the lake basin.

39

40 Domestic and international tourists also are drawn to lakes for their scenic beauty and 41 recreation (swimming, fishing, etc.). Thus, tourism is, or is hoped to become, a major 42 industry for more than half the lakes in this study. A combination of good water guality and cultural heritage sites are essential for successful tourism, and many of the lakes in 43 44 this study are striving to re-orient their tourism based on scenery, protected areas, and 45 cultural heritage. Tourism development strategies are evident in varying degrees for 46 Lakes Baikal, Biwa, Champlain, Cocibolca, Constance, Dianchi, Issy-Kul, Ohrid, Sevan, 47 Titicaca, Toba, and the North American Great Lakes.

- 48 49 Youth
- 50

51 Environmental education can be a very effective tool for public involvement, particularly 52 when directed to children. It also must be approached, however, as a continuous, lifelong 53 process, ideally beginning at the elementary school level. Further, the best results are 54 usually gained when relevant educational activities are conducted in direct contact with 55 nature. However, only a few lake briefs specifically mentioned lake programs targeted to 56 children, a major example being Lake Biwa. More than 300,000 5th grade students have 57 participated in a two-day work-study program since 1983 on a "floating school" ship. For 1 Lake Peipsi, more than 5,000 children a year have participated in an international

creative works contest, "World of Water Through the Eyes of Children," since 1996. *Indigenous People*

4

As used here, the term 'indigenous people' refers to traditional occupants of portions of a
lake basin that may be distinguished from other groups in national society by their
language, culture or economic activities. From a national perspective, they are typically
considered minorities, although they may form the dominant population in a given lake
basin. The traditional knowledge and belief-systems of indigenous peoples, however, are
based on sustainability and living in harmony with their environment, and can be
invaluable in promoting good lake management.

12

Neglecting indigenous peoples had negative impacts for several lakes in this study. A disregard of the indigenous fishing community in the Lake Chilika basin, for example, it was a source of conflict between the "gheri" fishermen and the increasingly marginalized indigenous fishermen, the latter typically employing sustainable fishing practices. The Tonga people in the Lake Kariba basin were forcibly displaced to build the Kariba Dam, without consideration of its prolonged negative impacts on the Tonga community. Positive experiences also are available in the lake briefs. In the case of Lake Titicaca, for

20 example, the Binational Authority, in coordination with the lake's indigenous

21 communities, greatly facilitated monitoring and lake regulatory activities.

- 22 23 Women
- 24

Among the four Dublin Principles for water management, the third principal specifically refers to the issue of women's participation: *"Women play a central role in the provision,*

27 management and safeguarding of water." Few lake briefs, however, acknowledge

women's participation in implementing water programs and projects. One is the

29 Participatory Rapid Appraisal (PRA), a successful technique for Lake Toba in which women

30 were invited to participate in community meetings. Women also organized the

previously-noted "Soap Movement" to eliminate the use of phosphorus-containing
 detergents in the Lake Biwa basin (see Box 5.1).

- 33
- 34 Non-Governmental Organizations (NGOs)
- 35

The term 'NGO' generally denotes formal groups of organized individuals for a variety of reasons. With memberships ranging from local to global, NGOs can advocate a particular cause or carry out programs . As used here, the term NGO refers to non-governmental organizations that are intermediaries in the process of facilitating policies and projects at the local community level. NGOs can play an important role in developing the capacity of local communities for self-mobilization and collective action, including helping marginalized community groups lacking the capacity to appropriately articulate their

- 43 demands. 44
- 45 Local Governments
- 46

Although not a 'public' stakeholder in the traditional sense, local governments can play a
central role in improved lake basin management. Constituted as municipal, district and
regional or state governments, local governments are the bodies 'closest to the ground,'
with the responsibility of feedback, initiation of ameliorating activities and execution of
policies, and usually have the major day-to-day responsibility for development. By the
nature of their commitment, they are often best placed for facilitating this dialogue at the
cutting-edge execution level.

54

There is widespread agreement that what is required for effective management is 'to *make distributed governance effective.*' Distributed governance describes a system
whereby the State no longer acts alone. Rather, many different parties—government, civil

society, private sector, individuals—have roles and responsibilities. As the level of government closest to the people, local governments are key actors in the field of freshwater management. Their position as a service provider, coupled with their ability to create behavioral change in their communities, afford them the opportunity to influence public responses to water use and mismanagement.

6 7

8

9

10 11 The first type of 'local authority' comprises lakes (and their basins) managed by a local government, or a number of local governments acting together, which is only possible when the lake lies within the boundaries of a single country. The Bhoj Wetlands, for example fall under the jurisdiction of the Bhopal Municipal Corporation (BMC). The state government executes the lake plan using its departments as well as the BMC. Lake Baringo is controlled by the Baringo County Council, with the lake being managed via a

- 13 committee with governments, community and NGO representatives.
- 14

12

15 A second class is represented by Lake Naivasha, wherein the initiative for lake

- 16 management came from local stakeholders, primarily through LNRA, an association of
- 17 property holders that expanded its membership to become more representative. It
- 18 developed a lake management plan approved by the national government, also forming
- the LNMIC as a wide body with additional representation from the district and nationallevel. LNMIC has no legal powers or formal budget, however, and the lake management
- 21 plan is implemented through consensus building.
- 22

23 Lake Biwa (managed directly by the Shiga Prefecture) and Chilika (under the direct

- control of the state government, with full regulatory and executive powers) are a third
- type, managed by single regional governments with jurisdiction over the lake. The
- powers of such governments are more effective than municipal or district bodies, and do
- 27 not depend on authority delegated by national governments.28
- Some lakes fall within the boundaries of a single country, but are managed directly by the national government (e.g., Laguna de Bay, Lakes Nakuru, Tonle Sap, Tucurui, Issyk-Kul and Sevan). Only preliminary lake management studies have been carried out for the latter four cases. The Laguna de Bay case, however, is particularly instructive, since the LLDA enjoys wide regulatory powers and has been successful in identifying several
- 34 management initiatives.
- 35

The largest type in this study comprise lakes shared between a number of different countries, ranging from two (Aral Sea) to five (Lake Chad). A lake authority or project has usually been set up by an interstate treaty/agreement to manage the lake, with

- 39 powers being delegated to the authority. These situations range from model
- 40 arrangements (e.g., Lake Champlain, with broad participation from all stakeholders) to
- 40 more informal structures (e.g., Lake Constance, where the stakeholders participate
- 41 through indirect means). For Lakes Dianchi and Nyasa/Malawi), no such authority has yet
- 43 been established, with lake conservation efforts remaining uncoordinated.
- 44
- 45 Resources, professional support and capacity building of local bodies are needed to
- 46 facilitate achievement of their desired functions. To this end, national governments must
- 47 be more receptive to facilitating the access of local governments to financial and
- 48 information resources, and to providing an enabling environment in which priority issues,
- 49 defined at the local level, can be addressed. Thus, a strong and equal partnership is
- 50 needed between all spheres of government—local, national and international.
- 51

53

52 **Public Participation and Empowerment**

- 54 Public participation in environmental management is a complex issue involving many 55 aspects. The term 'public participation' is used in differing ways in different cases,
- aspects. The term 'public participation' is used in differing ways in different
 sometimes being interchanged with other terms (e.g., stakeholder or citizen
- 57 participation). According to the World Bank (2000) there are four exclusive levels (or

1 types) of participation. In ascending order, from least influence to most influence, they 2 include: (1) information sharing (one-way communication); (2) consultation (two-way 3 communication); (3) collaboration (shared control over decisions and resources); and (4) empowerment (transfer of control over decisions and resources). These levels are not 4 5 indicators of scale, but rather distinctly different types of participation. It is not 6 necessarily assumed, however, that all participation is good, or that a higher level or 7 more participation is automatically better. Its ultimate value depends on the particular lake management situation. Some rationale for public participation and involvement in 8 9 lake management are summarized in Box 5.2

10

The experience from most developing countries suggests that international actors constitute an important stakeholder group. Through multilateral or bilateral programs and international NGOs, international donors can play a unique, critical role in translating global institutional agendas and local grassroots agendas into a common policy for managing lakes for their sustainable use. Further, international stakeholders often facilitate the critical technical and financial assistance for developing and establishing participatory lake basin management in developing countries.

18

19 Community-level Participation

20

21 At the community level, stakeholders can be individuals and/or community-based 22 organizations (sometimes referred to as primary stakeholders). In this report, they refer to local communities involved in lake basin management, referred to as community-level 23 24 participation. The term 'community' is used to designate both communities-of-place and communities-of-interest. Communities-of-place include members of the public who may 25 be affected by, or interested in, lake management decisions and actions by virtue of their 26 27 residency at or near the locations of management interventions. Communities-of-interest 28 include groups with a focused interest in management of resources unrelated to their 29 residences. Some communities can be both of place and interest (e.g., villages highly dependent on fishery, forestry or agriculture). 30

31

32 Lessons Learned Regarding Public Participation

33 Communication, education and public awareness are major elements for trying to change 34 35 human behavior. In the public participation process, communication is a two-way 36 exchange of information, ideally leading to mutual and enhanced understanding, and 37 facilitating cooperation between different groups in lake basins. Education refers to the process of informing, motivating and empowering people to be effective stakeholders. 38 Awareness involves bringing lake issues to the attention of individuals and key groups 39 40 with the power to influence outcomes. Awareness tends to be an agenda setting and 41 advocacy exercise meant to help people understand why lake management is an 42 important issue, the management targets, and what is being done (or can be done) to 43 achieve them. 44

- Based on the lake briefs, a number of best practices for public participation, and tools for
 information dissemination are summarized below. Additional information is provided in
 Boxes 5.3 and 5.4.
- 48 Active participation of the local community is vital to managing lakes and 49 their resources for sustainable use. Achieving meaningful community-level 50 participation can be difficult, and depends on the degree of the community awareness 51 of the important technical and social issues. Thus, local community involvement in 52 lake management efforts should be accompanied by public awareness and 53 information campaigns. In the Lake Baringo case, for example, the awareness-54 building program was linked to establishment of four wildlife sanctuaries managed by 55 56 local communities.
- 57

• Effective participation of local communities depends on social organization that establishes manageable groups within a community.

Communities may lack knowledge on how to build community institutions that represent a community's diverse interest groups or the capacity to act collectively. Thus, local community involvement needs to be supported by various measures to develop the capability for collective actions. NGOs can play an important role in this task, particularly in helping marginalized community groups.

8 9 10

11

20

29

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

• NGOs can play an important role in the implementation of projects and activities directed to integrated lake basin management.

Based on the experiences in this lake initiative, an important set of policy instruments 12 13 is the set of policies or actions that involve the public in some way, ranging from 14 relatively "soft" approaches (public information and publicity campaigns), to more 15 targeted techniques (public participation exercises, public consultation), to more extreme approaches (public oversight committees with assigned powers). 16 Nevertheless, although public participation offers great potential, it is no panacea. It 17 is an essential, but not always sufficient condition, for developing and implementing 18 19 improved lake basin management regimes.

In almost all cases, however, the potential for using public participation and 21 22 awareness to improvement lake basin management are substantial. As noted in the 23 lake briefs, these approaches tend to be more successful in lakes where the 24 population is better educated, better informed and wealthier. By definition, they also 25 are usually willing to forego some present private benefit for a greater public gain. In poorer societies, however, this may be a less feasible approach, since people would 26 27 likely be unwilling to give up any present income possibilities without some 28 alternative being available.

Appropriate indicators of success are needed to assess the effectiveness of lake management interventions

Environmental and socioeconomic indicators provide a means of identifying lake 32 33 problems, their root causes and potential impacts, and particularly for assessing the degree to which a lake management intervention has been successful (or not). The 34 35 SOLEC experience (State of the Lake Ecosystem Conference) in the North American Great Lakes provides valuable insight into the difficulties of developing and using 36 37 indicators that are insightful in regarding to identifying the magnitude of the management problems being faced in the lakes and their basins, as well as in 38 39 evaluating the success (or not) of addressing these problems (see Box 4.1). Although 40 much work remains to be done on this topic collectively by the scientific and management community, there is no doubt that a set of meaningful, measurable and 41 42 understandable indicators represents an important means of identifying problems. assessing management options, and ensuring the awareness of the public and lake 43 44 decision-makers of their necessity. Such indicators also can be valuable in changing 45 the community attitudes toward the need for lake management interventions, 46 including the possible impacts of what might happen if nothing is done.

47 48

Box 5.1. "Soap Movement" in Lake Biwa Watershed

A well-known example of public involvement is the case of the so-called Soap Movement in the Lake Biwa drainage basin. The initial problem was the occurrence of red tides, and their impacts on the lake's water quality, and a growing public awareness of the links between water quality, red tides and the use of phosphorus-containing synthetic detergents. Started initially by a woman's consumer group, the detergent manufacturers actively resisted change, and fought the Soap Movement. This manufacturer's resistance resulted in an increased level of awareness about the problem throughout the Shiga Prefecture, and actually helped ensure the very opposite result from what the manufacturers wanted (e.g., banning of phosphate-containing detergents). In this case, the impetus for change clearly came from the people, and the government responded to this movement with enactment of the Eutrophication Control Ordinance of 1979. The Lake Biwa

example illustrates the potential synergies between public involvement (crucial, but not sufficient by itself) and government action (in this case, a regulatory policy) that resulted in an effective response to Lake Biwa's water quality problem related to phosphate-containing detergents.

1

2

Box 5.2. Some Important Rationale for Public Involvement and Participation

- In democratic societies, government policy agendas (including natural resources) are fundamentally defined by the public;
- Policies and decisions that include significant inputs from public participation and consultation tend more often to be 'publicly owned' than those that without such inputs;
- Public participation allows governments and decision-makers to 'tap' into local and indigenous knowledge;
- Stakeholders affected by management decisions will not feel that their views were not considered (even if not completely used);
- Large parts of lake and reservoir basins are owned by the public (individuals rather than the state) in many countries;
- Management decisions often can be reached more expeditiously, following public participation (i.e., fewer time-consuming objections);
- It is 'good business' to give the customer (i.e., the public) what it wants;
- Best practice environmental management recognizes the good sense of proactive community involvement and consultation.
- (Source: Trudel et al., 2002)

Box 5.3. Best Practices for Public Participation

- Written MOUs to denote partnerships, cooperative agreements, etc.; "soft law" can be as important as laws and regulations;
- Legal requirements for open information and accountability;
- Permits for foreign investments need to include community consultation and an environment impact assessment (e.g., fish farms for Lakes Cocibolca and Toba); Engaging community groups, both formal and informal, is an effective way to involve people; formal
- groups have a greater likelihood of sustaining results and activities;
- Support for local watershed groups, etc., through small grants and other forms of technical assistance. The best practice is to provide both project funding, and financial support for basic operating costs of groups working to achieve basin management goals;
- Education and Science centers are important (e.g., Lakes Chilika, Champlain, Laguna de Bay);
- Information, education and awareness are a starting point for effective involvement;
- Gender perspectives should be considered, including important role of women, gender training (Lake Nakuru), sensitization to gender perspectives, etc;
- Recognizing and building upon the connection between people and their cultural heritage, as well as formal designations (e.g., World Heritage Sites, Biosphere Reserves, Ramsar sites);
- Mapping the watershed and presenting it to stakeholders is fundamental to establishing a basin-wide perspective;
- Participatory Rural appraisal (PRA) technique has been effectively adapted and applied in several developing country situations in Africa and Asia;
- Involving people is essential for basin management practices related to land use for controlling soil erosion and urban runoff through the conservation and management and management of agricultural and forest lakes (e.g., Lake Nakuru basin);
- Institutions, whether formal or informal, need to be created to facilitate and coordinate public involvement:
- Community-based (bottom-up) approaches to lake basin management help encourage participation of citizens and stakeholders, and can lead to better management results. However, the community-based approach must be implemented within the context of existing governance structures and in coordination with relevant lake basin institutions
- Involvement of citizens and stakeholders should be done as early as possible in the lake planning and management process;
- A democratic governance framework, although not essential, can facilitate the process. Even in highlydeveloped democracies, however, it remains a challenge to get citizen involvement.
- 3

Box 5.4. Information Dissemination Tools

Innovative tools for dissemination information include:

Resource, education or exhibition centers-Places where information generated through research and monitoring programs can be collected, collated and distributed through media such as print, Internet, television and other audio-visual means. These centers also provide a focal point for organizing campaigns, public forums and socio-cultural activities. Such centers have proven successful for Lakes Champlain, Chilika, Biwa, Nakuru (youth hostel) and Sevan, and the Bhoj Wetlands. In the Lake Ohrid basin, "Green Centers" were established in Macedonia and Albania to serve as clearinghouses to connect NGOs to each other and to provide the critical

information they need to mobilize public interest and action.

Participatory Rural Appraisal (PRA) programs—An avenue for disseminating information, particularly to local communities. They have been utilized, for example, in the Lake Baringo basin to dissemination information on the resource values of the lake system.

Models or pilot programs—Useful for demonstrating the possibilities and advantages of conservation actions (e.g., Lake Naivasha).

Chapter 4 material by JAD.

2 3

1

One important set of policy instruments or tools is the set of policies or actions that involve the public in some way. These include such relatively "soft" approaches as public information and publicity campaigns, to more targeted techniques like public participation exercises and public consultation, and, at the extreme, public oversight committees with assigned powers. Public participation offers great potential but is no panacea—it often is an essential but not sufficient condition for formatting and implementing improved management regimes.

11

In almost all cases, however, the potential for using public participation (and awareness) 12 to improve lake management are substantial (see Chapter 5 for more on the potential for 13 involving people). Not surprisingly, people-centered approaches often tend to be more 14 15 successful in lakes where the population is better educated, better informed, and wealthier and by definition willing to forgo some present private benefit for a greater 16 public gain. Is this borne out by Briefs?? In poorer societies, this may be less feasible 17 since people are unwilling to give up any present income without some alternative being 18 19 offered. As seen in many locations, public consultation and participation per se are no 20 guarantee of improved or successful management—different groups can still have conflicting objectives and may agree to consult on, but not abide by, the new proposals. 21 22 Consultation is a necessary, but by no means sufficient, condition for effective lake basin 23 management.

24

Of all of the policy tools available, decision makers most often underestimate the potential of those policy tools that involve the public. This is in part because the very process is more bottom-up and consultative while the traditional decision-making and policy-making framework is top-down and dictated. Nevertheless, a number of useful examples of public involvement in improved lake management are seen in the lake case studies. Slower and not "openable"

31

32 One well-known example is the case of the Soap Movement in Lake Biwa. The initial 33 problem was the occurrence of red tides and a growing public awareness of the links 34 between water quality, red tides, and the use of phosphate-containing synthetic 35 detergents. Started initially by a woman's consumer group, the soap manufacturers actively resisted change and fought the Soap Movement. This resulted in an increased 36 37 level of awareness about the problem throughout Shiga prefecture, and actually helped ensure the very opposite result (e.g. banning of phosphate-based detergents) from what 38 39 the manufactures wanted. In this case the impetus for change clearly came from the people, and government followed with the enacting of the Eutrophication Control 40 41 Ordinance of 1979. The Lake Biwa example nicely illustrates the synergies between 42 public involvement (crucial but not sufficient by itself) and government action (in this 43 case a regulatory command and control (CAC) policy) that resulted in an effective 44 response to the water quality problem. This instrument should be left to earlier chapter 45 or else these chapters need to be merged.

Chapter 6. Technological Responses: Possibilities and Limitations

Key Lessons Learned about Technological Responses

- Technological interventions by themselves are not sufficient: root causes must be addressed.
- When diverting wastewater, don't forget about the "new" downstream.
- It is cheaper to prevent toxic contamination that to dredge a lake.
- Extensive research is needed to ensure that the introduction of a biological agent to a lake will not have unexpected effects.
- If root causes of macrophytes growth (high nutrient levels) are not addressed, successful removal of one species can just make way for another species to invade.
- Water diversion schemes, while they may have a positive effect on the receiving basin, can be disastrous for the exporting basin.
- If the root cause of a problem has been controlled, then dredging can have a positive, long-term effect.

3

Changing people's behavior is not easy. Whether it is done by making rules or creating
incentives (Chapter 4) or by internalizing new values through education and raising
awareness (Chapter 5), it is a challenge. Decision makers know this. And that is why one
of the first responses to a problem at many of the lakes in this study is a technological
response—a "quick fix"—one that tries to alleviate a problem, often not by addressing the
root causes, but by engineering a solution.

10

11 Sometimes these technological responses can have profoundly positive effects on lakes.

12 Below, we will look at cases where measures like sewage treatment, dredging, and the

biological agents have increased lake values. One of the key lessons of this report,

14 however, is that technological responses on their own are not sufficient and is the main

reason why we see a range of responses described in Chapters 4, 5 and 6.

16

17 The purpose of this chapter is to discuss the conditions under which technological 18 responses can be useful and to extract some lessons from the lake briefs. This chapter 19 examines "technical" conservation/remediation interventions that help protect a lake's 20 values and does not discuss development interventions such as fish pens and hydropower dams. The technological responses described here can be broadly divided into two 21 22 groups: watershed-based measures (which include point and nonpoint measures) and inlake measures (which include biological, chemical and physical measures). Table 6.1 23 24 provides a summary of the various techniques described in the lake briefs as well as an 25 overview of this chapter. 26

27 However, the extraction of lessons about technological interventions from the lake briefs 28 is limited for two main reasons. First, the lakes selected for this project tend to be quite 29 large, so many of the techniques used at smaller lakes (e.g. water-level drawdown, deep 30 water discharge, artificial circulation, sediment oxidation) are not described. The Bhoj Wetland case (the smallest lake in the sample) is an exception which illustrates some of 31 32 these potential techniques such as artificial aeration. A reader interested in a more 33 comprehensive survey of technological responses may wish to consult reports such as 34 Holdren et al. (2001) and National Research Council (1992). 35

36

			Point sou	Nonpoint source control			
Problem		Wastewater Diversion	Conventional	Constructed Reforestation Wetlands			
	iversity Loss			Advanced	Industrial		
	Algal Blooms	Lake Dianchi, Lake Tahoe, Lake Washington			Lake Biwa, Lake Champlain, Lake Constance, Lake Dianchi, Laguna de Bay, North American Great Lakes	Extensive, including Aral Sea Lake Chad	Lake Baikal Lake Baringo Bhoj Wetland Lake Chad Lake Chilika Laguna de Bay Lake Nakuru Lake Ohrid Lake Tanganyika Lake Toba
Eutrophication	Low Dissolved Oxygen	Bhoj Wetland, Lake Dianchi	Extensive (see Box 1 for list)	Lake Biwa, Lake Champlain, Lake Constance, Lake Dianchi, North American Great Lakes		Lake Champlain Lake Naivasha Lake Ohrid	
	Excessive Macrophyte Growth						
Exotic Species							
Pathogens		Lake Michigan, Bhoj Wetland	Extensive (see Box 1 for list)				
Siltation		Various Indian Rivers				See above	See above
Toxic Contamination					Lake Baikal, Lake Biwa, Lake Champlain, Lake Constance, Lake Dianchi, North American Great Lakes		
Water Level Decrease							

1 Table 6.1. Summary of Technological Responses at the 28 Study Lakes

			ogical	Chemical	In-Lake Measures Physical				
Problem		Predators	Biomanipulation	Biocides	Aeration	Dilution/	Dredging	Harvesting	
	iversity Loss					Diversion Aral Sea			
	Algal Blooms		???	Ex of algicide?					
Eutrophication	Low Dissolved Oxygen				Bhoj Wetland	Lake Dianchi	Bhoj Wetland, Lake Biwa, Lake Dianchi (Chilika Lagoon for indirect marcophyte control)		
	Excessive Macrophyte Growth	Lake Kariba, Lake Naivasha,		Lake Kariba				Bhoj Wetland, Lake Biwa, Chilika Lagoon,	
Exot	ic Species	Lake Victoria						Lake Toba, Lake Victoria	
Path	logens							Lake Chad, Lake Victoria (macrophytes removal to control vector breeding grounds)	
Silta	tion						Bhoj Wetland, Chilika Lagoon		
Toxi Con	c tamination						Lake Champlain, Lake Dianchi, North American Great Lakes	Bhoj Wetland, Lake Victoria	
	er Level rease					Lake Dianchi (Proposals at Aral Sea and Issyk-kul)			

1 Table 6.1. (cont.) Summary of Technological Responses at the 28 Study Lakes

1 Watershed-based Measures

3 <u>Point-source Control</u>

Wastewater Diversion

5 6

2

4

7 One simple way of avoiding the negative effects of wastewater on a lake is to divert it outside of the basin so that it never reaches the lake. Over 100 years ago-to combat 8 typhoid and cholera outbreaks-the wastewater of Chicago was diverted from Lake 9 10 Michigan by an engineering project that reversed the flow of the Chicago River from its 11 original direction to Lake Michigan to the Illinois River/Mississippi River system. This 12 effectively removed the huge city of Chicago, located on the shores of Lake Michigan, 13 from the drainage basin of the North American Great Lakes. However, while it took care of the pathogen problem in Lake Michigan, the water quality of the Illinois River and 14 Mississippi River suffered as a result. Similar diversions of sewage have been carried out 15 in the Bhoj Wetland case to control nutrient inflow as well as to minimize microbial 16 17 contamination of this drinking water source. Diversion of sewage may become an option 18 at Lake Dianchi, but only after completion of another diversion project—one that brings 19 water from outside the Dianchi basin into the basin for use in Kunming city. The reason is 20 that without the in-coming diversion, the water balance in the basin depends heavily on 21 the irrigation return flows and re-use of domestic sewage, so exporting sewage was, until 22 recently, not an option because of the need to keep scarce (yet polluted) water resources in the basin. 23

24

In addition to the Lake Michigan and Bhoj Wetland, there are two classic cases of sewage 25 diversion in the literature. In the 1960s sewage was diverted from Lake Washington 26 27 (near Seattle in the NW United States) to the Puget Sound, which as part of the ocean, 28 was thought to have higher assimilative capacity. As a result of the diversion, the lake 29 went from a eutrophic to an oligotrophic state due to lower nutrient loading, making Lake 30 Washington a well-known lake that had been "saved". A similar scheme was carried out 31 at Lake Tahoe (on the California-Nevada border in the Western United States). Even 32 though the sewage flowing into Lake Tahoe had been treated at an advanced level, the 33 remaining nutrients were still high enough to pose a problem for this ultra-oligotrophic lake. The sewage was diverted out of the basin into a constructed impoundment. 34 35

The key lesson learned from these examples is that wastewater diversion can have a positive effect on a lake from which the sewage is being diverted, but it is important to consider potential negative effects on the area receiving the new pollution load. That may indeed be preferable in cases when a valuable lake resource is being saved is greater than the costs being incurred elsewhere, including the losses suffered by people not well represented in the decision-making process.

42

43 Conventional Wastewater Treatment (Primary and Secondary Treatment) 44

Directly treating wastewater before it gets to a lake is another major response to lake problems, and one that actually addresses the root causes. This sub-section, and the two that follow, look at three major types of wastewater treatment found in the cases: conventional wastewater treatment (for pathogen and organic removal), advanced

49 wastewater treatment (for nutrient removal) and industrial wastewater treatment (for50 toxic removal).

51

52 Conventional wastewater treatment is traditionally divided into primary and secondary

53 treatment. Primary treatment involves mainly physical means of treating wastewater,

- 54 such as sedimentation tanks, whereas secondary treatment usually employs
- 55 microorganisms to degrade organic material in the sewage, by processes such as
- 56 activated sludge or trickling filters. Conventional treatment is usually carried out at
- 57 centralized locations that are connected to sewerage pipes that bring in the sewage from

surrounding domestic sources, although on-site treatment is common in areas with low
 population density. Conventional treatment removes many pathogens and much organic

- 3 material thereby alleviating problems related to pathogenic contamination and low
- 4 dissolved oxygen levels due to high organic loading. However, as discussed in Chapter 2,
- 5 in many cases, the main motivation for constructing a conventional wastewater
- 6 treatment system is the amenity and direct health benefits of sanitation it provides to
- 7 users—regardless of the positive effects it may have on a lake. Box 6.1 summarizes the
- 8 use of conventional and advanced wastewater treatment in the 28 cases.

Box 6.1. Conventional and Advanced Wastewater Treatment at the 28 Study Lakes

Ide (2004) analyzed the extent of sewage treatment at the 28 lakes based on per capita gross national income (GNI) and population density. The results are summarized in the table below. The extent and degree of wastewater treatment is indicated by the **bold** words in each cell (e.g., **Low to High**). The classes of treatment are indicated as **low** = primary, **medium** = secondary, and **high** = tertiary. For lake basins with low population density and low GNI per capita (cell I-1), almost no sewage treatment is carried out. As both income and density increase (I-2, II-1, II-2), conventional treatment systems expand, usually with bilateral funding. For high GNI per capita countries (III-1, III-2), even in sparsely populated areas (III-1) conventional and advanced treatment are carried out, usually with central or local government funding. A full discussion can be found in Ide (2004) on the CD-ROM.

Population Density						
GNI per capita	1) < 100 person/km ²	2) >= 100 person/km ²				
I) Low-Income Economies < US\$736	I-1) Malawi, George, Tonle Sap, Issyk- Kul, Chad, Kariba, Tanganyika, Baringo, Chilika Rare or Low ; Even not in plan	 I-2) Victoria, Naivasha, Nakuru, Bhoj Wetland, Toba Low to Medium (in urban area) Funded by bilateral assistance 				
II) Middle-Income Economies US\$736 – US\$9,075	II-1) Aral Sea, Baikal, Titicaca, Ohrid, Xingkai/Khanka, Tucurui, Peipsi/Chudskoe, Cocibolca Low to Medium Partly funded by bilateral assistance	II-2) Dianchi, Laguna de Bay Low to High Funded by bilateral or the central government's assistance				
III) High-Income Economies > US\$9,075	 III-1) Champlain, Great Lakes High Funded by the central and local governments 	III-2) Constance, BiwaHighFunded by the central and local governments				
Source: Ide (2004).						

10

- 11 Advanced Wastewater Treatment (Tertiary Treatment)
- 12

13 Advanced wastewater treatment, as discussed here, is simply enhanced nutrient (N, P) removal at conventional wastewater treatment plants. The purpose is to cut down on the 14 load of nutrients to a lake to prevent or control eutrophication. While conventional 15 16 treatment removes a small percentage of nutrients in sewage, advance treatment such 17 as chemical precipitation and nitrification/denitrification can achieve up to 95% removal 18 of nutrients. Advanced treatment requires both conventional treatment to be in place and 19 additional funds for construction and operation; therefore, it is usually carried out only in 20 high-income economies like those in cells III-1 and III-2 of Box 6.1. In our 28 cases, 21 only Lakes Biwa, Champlain, Constance, Dianchi and the North American Great Lakes 22 have extensive advanced treatment facilities in place. However, in those cases, advanced 23 treatment has profoundly reduced the load of phosphorus to the lakes, a root cause of 24 eutrophication.

Box 6.2. Timing of Water Supply, Conventional and Advanced Wastewater Treatment Development

The cases of Lake Constance, Lake Biwa and Lake Nakuru provide contrasting examples of the timing and methods of how infrastructure like water supply, conventional wastewater treatment and advanced wastewater treatment are developed.

For Lake Constance, people in the lake basin have had water supply service for more than one hundred years. Installation of a sewerage system came much later than the completion of the water supply system. In 1972 only 25% of all inhabitants in the catchment area were connected to sewage plants with biological (conventional-secondary) treatment. However, the percentage has increased rapidly since reaching 90% in 1985 and over 95% in 2001. At the same time, the percentage of biologically-treated sewage that is also treated with phosphorus removal systems (advanced) increased from 24% in 1972, to 88% in 1985, and tc 97% in 2001.

The population coverage of water supply at Lake Biwa basin was about 30% in the 1950s, but in step with high economic growth in Japan, the percentage increased rapidly and reached 80% in the 1960s. However, sewage treatment systems covered only 4% until the 1980s. Drastic expansion of the sewage system in Shiga started in the early 1980s, and current coverage is now around 70%. Interestingly, because the construction of sewerage and sewage treatment was relatively "late", both conventional and advanced treatment systems were constructed together from the beginning. Today, the percentage of advanced treatment in Shiga is the highest in Japan.

In sharp contrast to the above two lakes, a full scale water supply system was first installed in the catchment area of Lake Nakuru in the early 1990s. As a result, the old sewage treatment plant (conventional) became unable to treat the volume of newly generated wastewater, and much wastewater began to come into the lake without treatment. To solve this problem, a large-scale improvement project of sewage system started at Lake Nakuru several years later. However, no advanced treatment has been installed yet. Additionally, connection tc the upgraded plant has not been completed and it is running well under capacity. This illustrates the necessity of a multisectoral plan that considers the development of water supply system together with sewage system.

In short, water supply, sewage, and advanced treatment systems were adopted in stages at Lake Constance as well as other lakes in most developed countries. However, both sewage and advanced treatment systems were introduced simultaneously at Lake Biwa after the completion of water supply system. Even though Lake Nakuru had the above-mentioned problem and does not have advanced treatment yet, it achieved the development of water supply and sewage system almost at the same time. These facts imply that, if financial arrangements are available, there is a possibility to develop those three systems simultaneously although stepwise implementation of environmental infrastructure is more realistic and common. The development of environmental infrastructure in a multisectoral manner would be more desirable to achieve long-term goals for lake management.

Source: Ide (2004).

1

Industrial Wastewater Treatment

5 While industrial wastewater can be a source of organic matter and nutrients to a lake, 6 one of the main reasons for industrial wastewater treatment is to prevent toxic contamination. The extent of industrial wastewater treatment is similar to advanced 7 wastewater treatment (discussed in Box 6.1) with some exceptions. Extensive treatment 8 9 with strict effluent standards is in place at Lakes Biwa, Champlain, Constance, Dianchi and the North American Great Lakes. This treatment removes toxics as well as organic 10 matter and nutrients before it can reach the lakes. 11

12 13

At Lake Baikal, the only significant source of industrial wastewater to the lake—a pulp 14 mill-is installing a closed wastewater treatment system to control release of organocholide compounds to the lake. Plans to control toxic effluents have been proposed for 15 Lakes Naivasha and Nakuru but are yet to be carried out. There is a special program in 16 17 place at Laguna de Bay that charges industries for the amount of organic matter (BOD) 18 they discharge to the lake. The brief argues that this has lead to a sharp drop in organic 19 loading to the lake (see also Chapter 8 for discussion). 20

In some cases, such as the Russian side of Lake Xingkai/Khanka or Lake Sevan, 21

- 22 economic downturns can lead to a drop in industrial wastewater loads-an example
- where factors exogenous to the lake basin itself van have a great influence on the lake. 23

² 3 4

1

2 The main lesson regarding industrial wastewater treatment comes from the cases where 3 it was not carried out. In general, when there was a large release of toxic in a lake basin, the three characteristics of lakes make clean-up a huge undertaking. Long retention time 4 5 means that toxic chemicals in a lake are not flushed and stay in the system for a long 6 time. Complex dynamics means that the chemicals often biomagnify, creating both 7 ecological damage and risk to humans. Transmissivity means that the problem cannot 8 usually be contained to a small area but tends to spread. As discussed latter in this 9 chapter, various remediation methods exist, but all are more expense that proper 10 treatment in the first place.

11

12 <u>Nonpoint Source Control</u>

13 14 Point source control is one of the first technological responses to lake problems, but even 15 in cases where it has been considered successful, nonpoint sources of pollutants often remain uncontrolled and contribute to persistent problems. The Lake Biwa, Champlain, 16 Constance and North American Great Lakes Briefs all cite nonpoint sources as the main 17 18 challenges facing those lakes. The difficulty in controlling nonpoint sources, which include 19 agriculture and urban runoff, is that sources cannot be readily identified (complicating 20 regulation and enforcement) and usually are related to precipitation events and therefore 21 quite variable. The problem of nonpoint source pollution is compounded in many lake 22 basins by the destruction of littoral wetlands, areas that typically moderate nonpoint 23 inputs to a lake by serving as a sort of "filter". 24

- 25 Constructed Wetlands
- 26

Almost all the 28 lake briefs indicate some degree of human encroachment on littoral
wetlands. This usually results from development of lakeshore areas (urban sprawl at Lake
Champlain, construction of roads at Lake Biwa) or reclamation of wetlands for farming or
grazing. One simple way of reducing nonpoint source loads to a lake is to rehabilitate
these wetlands. An additional benefit is that rehabilitation helps conserve and restore
biodiversity. Some of the more detailed efforts include:

33 34

35

36

51

52

- The Lake Ohrid Brief describes how the 2003 "Transbouandary Watershed Action Plan" signed by riparian countries provides for habitat protection and restoration through wetlands inventory and the establishment of a no-net-loss policy.
- The Lake Chad Brief provides a good example of rehabilitation of the Logone
 wetland in Cameroon in 1993. The embankments of the barrage along the river
 were modified over eight years. Stakeholders and local community members were
 involved in the planning and design of the project.
- The Lake Champlain Brief details how the Lake Champlain Basin Program
 sponsored a wetland acquisition strategy that laid the groundwork for a fourphase, multiyear program to permanently protect almost 9,000 acres of wetlands
 in the Champlain Valley. By 2001, \$1.4 million in federal funds had been provided
 to the project, which had conserved 4,000 acres of wetlands and surrounding
 areas in the Basin.
- The Lake Naivasha Brief shows how several of the larger farms in the basin have
 looked at ways of improving their impact on the environment by using integrated
 pest management to cut down on pesticides and using constructed wetlands to
 treat their wastewater.
 - The Aral Sea Brief illustrates international efforts by the GEF and World Bank to restore wetlands on the lower Amu Darya delta.
- The main lesson learned, especially for lake basins where wetlands are still in their
 natural condition, is that wetland protection should be a top priority. If wetlands are lost,
 the cases show that there will be an imperative in the future to replace them; therefore,
 it is much more cost effective to avoid destruction in the first place. The activities of the

1 Ramsar Convention, the major international effort to promote wetland conservation and 2 restoration, are detailed in Box 6.3.

- 4 Reforestation
- 5

3

6 Like the destruction of wetlands, loss of forest cover in a lake basin also invariably has

7 negative effects on a lake, usually by increasing land erosion and sediment transport.

8 Reforestation schemes (replacing destroyed forests) are discusses in the Baikal, Chad,

9 Laguna de Bay, Nakuru, Ohrid, Tanganyika and Toba Briefs. Afforestation schemes (to
10 plant forest where it did not exist before) are described in the Baringo, Bhoj Wetland and

11 Chilika Briefs. Once again, the key lesson learned is that it is better to preserve the

12 original resource than to restore it, as will inevitably be necessary.

13

Box 6.3. Wetland Conservation: The Ramsar Convention and Lakes

One of the most important international initiatives to protect and restore wetlands is the Convention on Wetlands (Ramsar, Iran, 1971), known as the Ramsar Convention for short. The approximately half of lakes in this survey have Ramsar sites, which include, in some cases, both littoral areas and the lakes themselves.

The Ramsar Convention defines "wetlands" in its Article 1.1 as "...wetlands are areas of marsh, fen, peatland or water, whether natural or artificial, permanent or temporary, with water that is static or flowing, fresh, brackish or salt, including areas of marine water the depth of which at low tide does not exceed six metres" and Article 2.1 provides that wetlands "may incorporate riparian and coastal zones adjacent to the wetlands, and islands or bodies of marine water deeper than six metres at low tide lying within the wetlands".

For lake systems, a detailed Ramsar Classification System for Wetland Types the classification has the following categories:

O-Permanent freshwater lakes (over 8 ha); includes large oxbow lakes.

P-Seasonal/intermittent freshwater lakes (over 8 ha); includes floodplain lakes.

Q—Permanent saline/brackish/alkaline lakes.

R-Seasonal/intermittent saline/brackish/alkaline lakes and flats

Note that for the Convention lakes can be fresh, brackish saline or alkaline. Lakes in general are not well represented as wetlands of International Importance, although some regions have good representation. More importantly, the fact that the Convention urges contracting parties to manage effectively and sustainably all wetlands, including lakes, within a contracting parties national boundaries, means the Convention process and advice covers all lakes and the dependant biodiversity, even if some of this is migratory.

Of the Ramsar sites (wetlands of international importance) the areal extent of the 4 categories, in each of the Ramsar regions, is shown in the Table below:

	0	Ρ	Q	R	all 4 types
Africa	14,535,913	16,253,389	1,593,452	2,294,209	24,313,987
Asia	2,904,800	1,589,078	4,100,218	2,442,435	6,118,175
Europe	15,372,268	5,807,754	3,818,388	2,172,043	16,861,747
North America	14,289,625	1,360,416	913,297	1,201,914	14,920,266
Oceania	704,720	3,609,323	477,211	1,789,330	4,982,808
Neotropics	18,751,932	11,116,523	4,391,158	8,242,720	25,440,355
World Total	66,559,258	39,736,483	15,293,724	18,142,651	92,637,338

The Ramsar Small grants fund, a rather small fund, has nonetheless funded lake projects to a value of around CHF 950,000, helping deal with management issues for lakes with a total areal extent of 4,278,364 Ha. The Lakes were in all regions of the world, including the following countries: Bulgaria, Former Yugoslavia, Armenia, Georgia, Russian federation (3), Algeria, Uganda, Burkina Faso, Comoros, Togo (2), China (3), Mongolia, Philippines, Argentina, Paraguay, Peru, Ecuador (2), and Bolivia.

The Convention will continue to promote wise management of lake systems, as part of its global approach to wetlands and water. Approaches that emphasize the need for integrated management approach, and build on the river basin initiative being developed between Ramsar, CBD and UNDP-GEF will continue to be advanced by the Ramsar secretariat. Lake issues will be included in the range of issues and advices to be considered by the next COP meeting, set for November 2005 in Kampala, Uganda.

Source: Peter Bridgewater, Secretary General, RAMSAR Convention.

In-Lake Measures

4 Biological Measures

5 6 Predators

1 2

3

7 Biological measures can be used to control either introduced nuisance species, such as 8 water hyacinth, or problematic outbreaks of endogenous species, such as excessive 9 10 blooms of cyanobacteria. A major reason why introduced species are often so successful 11 in new environments is because they are no longer faced with their natural enemies. 12 Thus, when Water Hyacinth is introduced (unintentionally) to a lake where these 13 pathogens and predators are absent, and where other conditions are favorable (temperature, nutrients), then the growth can be explosive. These enemies of the 14 15 invasive species' can be introduced in order to control their rampant growth. 16 For example, at Lake Victoria two species of weevils (Neochetina eichhornia and 17

18 *Neochetina bruchi*) have been used successfully to combat serious infestation of Water 19 Hyacinth. Extensive research was conducted prior to the release of the weevils to show 20 the weevils would be Water Hyacinth-specific and would not result in another 21 uncontrollable distortion of the ecosystem (as occurred after the introduction of the Nile 22 Perch in the 1950s). The weevils have been successful in controlling the Water Hyacinth 23 infestation in this lake, although the reduction in the weed was probably assisted by a 24 period of extreme weather. The traditional fishing communities have been successfully engaged in raising and releasing the weevils for water hyacinth control, so the program 25 can be expected to sustain itself. 26

27

In Lake Kariba, grasshoppers (*Paulinia acuminata*) were used to control excessive growth
of the invasive Kariba Weed (*Salvinia molesta*). The effect of these predators, along with
generally dropping nutrient levels, has been credited with the weed's decline.

32 The Lake Naivasha case notes that Kariba Weed has been on the lake since 1962 and by 33 the early 1970s it had become a major ecological problem as it covered a large portion of the lake. After chemical control (see below) failed, a biological control agent Cyrtobagus 34 35 salviniae, a host-specific insect, was introduced and by the early 1990's had effectively 36 reduced the Kariba Weed cover to insignificant levels. Unfortunately, after the Kariba 37 Weed was controlled, Water Hyacinth was able to spread rapidly, probably due to lack of competition with Kariba Weed. Water Hyacinth is now being controlled by the Neochetina 38 weevils described above. The key lesson learned is that without attacking the root causes 39 40 (high nutrient levels), control of one aquatic weed may just make room for another.

41 42 Fish can also be introduced to control aquatic weeds. For example, at Bhoi Wetland, herbivore Grass Carp (Ctenopharyngodon idella) along with Indian Major carp were 43 44 introduced in the lakes to control submerged weeds such as Hydrilla, Najas and 45 Vallisnaria. In order to avoid any problems cause by breeding of the Grass Carp, triploid species that do not reproduced were used. This introduction has resulted in the reduction 46 47 of density of aquatic weeds up to 50% and increase in fish production by 130%. Thus 48 there has been improvement of lake water quality as well as economic conditions of 49 fishermen. 50

51 *Biomanipulation* 52

Biomanipulation is the deliberate introduction of species that will affect the lake's food chain in a beneficial way. The technique has been most widely used to control outbreaks of nuisance algae. In the classic approach, top-level predatory fish are introduced to a lake in order to reduce the populations of insectivorous fish. This, in turn, reduces the pressure on invertebrates which feed on the algae. Invertebrate populations increase and algal numbers decrease. While the technique has been successful in trials, it has not
proven sustainable in the long-term. There are too many alternative food pathways and
too many other influences on algae for the technique to be reliable. In addition, it
requires a detailed knowledge of the aquatic ecology of the lake and the long-term
presence of ecological monitoring. For these reasons, its use has been confined to lakes

6 in the developed world and even there it is not in widespread use.

7

9

8 <u>Chemical Measures</u>

10 Biocides

11

Another possible technical response is to apply a chemical to a lake to control an algal 12 13 bloom or to kill an invasive species. While bio-degradable chemicals can often be used to contain unwanted side-effects of a chemical, the cost is usually prohibitive is the 14 15 infestation is extensive. For example, herbicides have been used at Lake Kariba to control both Water Hyacinth and Kariba Weed but given the scale of the infestation, it was shown 16 that chemical measures would be uneconomical. In addition, there is usually a strong 17 18 public reaction against these methods, even when biodegradable chemicals are used. For 19 this reason, this approach is not very common.

20

21 <u>Physical Measures</u> 22

23 Aeration

24

25 The decay of organic matter in a lake, either because of high organic loading from the watershed or from the decay of algal blooms, can lead to low dissolved oxygen (DO) in a 26 27 lake. Low DO can lead to fish kills and the denial of benthic waters to commercially and 28 ecologically important species. One short-term way of dealing with the problem is to 29 inject more dissolved oxygen into the low DO area, usually the bottom of the lake. This is 30 only viable in the smallest lakes. For example, aeration has only been used at the 31 smallest lake in our study, the Bhoj Wetland, where a total of 15 aeration units have been installed to oxygenate the bottom water. This has not only caused improvement in 32 33 water quality but has become a tourist attraction. Naturally, this effort does not attack the root cause of low DO levels which is high organic loading and eutrophication of the 34 35 lake. 36

37 Freshwater Diversion into a Basin

38

In cases where water in a lake basin is in short supply or when a lake has been heavily polluted, another physical countermeasure is to bring more water in from outside the basin. Adding more water to a lake and/or its basin can alleviate a water shortage or it can serve to dilute already polluted water, thereby lowering the concentration of pollutants in the lake. While bringing in more water does not address the root causes of any problems (inefficient water use, overuse, or pollution), it is nevertheless used in some cases.

46

47 For example, to alleviate a chronic water shortage in the Lake Dianchi basin caused by 48 rapid population growth in a water scarce area, a water transfer scheme from the Zhangjiuhe River (a tributary of the Jinsha River which is located downstream of the 49 Dianchi Basin) is under construction (expected completion date of 2005/6). The project 50 will bring in about 245 million m³ of water into Kunming for the purpose of the city's 51 water supply. Additionally, the Aral Sea brief notes that "during the latter part of the 52 53 Soviet period, water managers in Moscow and in Central Asia proposed diversion of massive flow, up to 60 km³, from Siberian rivers to the region as the panacea for 54 perceived water shortage problems. Although real and serious potential ecological threats 55 (of regional, not global magnitude as claimed by some opponents) were given as the 56 chief reason for canceling the project, economic considerations were the fundamental 57

factors in this decision." The Issyk-kul brief also mentions similar yet-to-be-implemented
schemes to transfer water into the basin in order to maintain development of irrigation
(in the Issyk-kul basin), and also to maintain the current water balance and water level
of the lake.

5

A unique "diversion" scheme is currently taking place at the Aral Sea (apart from the 6 proposal discussed above). Desiccation of the Aral Sea, due to diversions of inflowing 7 rivers, has lead to the split-up of the lake into three parts (as of 2004). A small dam has 8 been built between the Small Aral in the north and the Large Aral in the south. The dam 9 10 is used to retain water in the smaller yet deeper northern part; without the dam, water 11 would continue being lost from the Small Aral to the Large Aral, where it tends to be rapidly lost due to high evaporation. It is expected that the Large Aral will completely dry 12 13 up in the mid-term, but with this "diversion", the Small Aral will stabilize and a portion of the biodiversity of the original Aral Sea will be maintained. 14

15

A key lesson from these diversion schemes is that, while they may have a positive effect on the basin that receives that water, there is undoubtedly a negative effect in the basin that loses the water. As discussed in Chapter 2, there have been numerous diversions *from* lake basins (e.g. Aral, Baringo, Chad, Nakuru and Sevan), all with large, often unexpected, negative effects. Proposed schemes of water transfer from Lakes Naivasha and the North American Great Lakes have not been carried out, in part due to the knowledge of these negative experiences and economic reasons.

23

24 The use of transferred water to "dilute" a polluted lake is more common at small lakes 25 than at the type of lakes in our survey. However, one of the purposes of the Lake Dianchi diversion discussed above is to change the flushing rate of the lake in order to decrease 26 27 the hypereutrophic conditions that currently prevail. The Lake Ohrid case discusses how a 28 large river (Sateska) was diverted from its natural course, which originally flowed to a 29 point outside of the Lake Ohrid basin, to a new course within the basin that was designed 30 to drain a marshland for farming and to increase the hydropower potential of the lake. 31 The purpose was not to "dilute" the water of Lake Ohrid, which at the time was 32 oligotrophic, but the effect of the diversion was to increase the size of the Lake Ohrid subwatershed by about 174%. The problem was that this new inflow brought with it a 33 large load of sediment and organic matter that has had a negative effect on the lake. 34

35

36 Nevertheless, it is obvious that the proverb "dilution is not the solution to pollution" is 37 perfectly correct. Given the transmissivity of lakes, even if a greater water volume is somehow attained, it is only a matter of time before the pollution spreads. In fact, the 38 Lake Ohrid case shows that "dilution" can actually be a cause of "pollution". A key lesson 39 40 from these diversion schemes is that, while they can have a positive effect on the basin 41 that receives that water, there is usually a negative effect in the basin that loses the 42 water and sometimes even in the lake receiving the additional water. Very thorough studies need to be carried out in advance to understand these likely consequences. Again 43 44 it is a matter of balancing these benefits against the costs and taking into account the 45 equity issues in any such water transfers.

- 46
- 47 Dredging

48

49 The removal of sediment from lake bottoms by hydraulic dredging is a common activity to removed excess silt, nutrients, and toxic compounds. For example, changes in basin 50 land use led to large increases in sediment loading to both the Bhoi Wetland and Chilika 51 Lagoon. For the Bhoj Wetland, the deposition of silt had created a land mass formation at 52 confluence points which resulted in decrease in storage capacity and surface area, as well 53 as the obstruction of the lake's outlet. Silt was removed from the upper and lower lakes 54 by both hydraulic and dry excavation means, increasing the capacity of the lake by 4%. 55 The excavated materials were used to convert previously barren lands into productive 56 lands for agriculture. At the Chilika Lagoon, siltation of the outlet of the lake resulted in a 57

decrease in salinity which caused both a decline in the native fisheries as well as an increase in invasive macrophytes growth. A new channel to the ocean was dredged and the salinity returned to normal conditions, leading to a dramatic recovery of the fishing and prawn industries. There was also a decrease of the area covered by invasive species and substantial increase in the weed free zone consequent upon desiltation operation.

6

7 Dredging of sediment is also sometimes used to remove internal sources of nutrients 8 (usually phosphorus) in shallow, eutrophic lakes or toxic contaminants. For example, the Lake Biwa, Bhoj Wetland and Lake Dianchi cases all describe how dredging was carried 9 10 out to remove phosphorus-laden sediment. In another example, 140,000 tons of PCB 11 contaminated sludge were removed from the sediment of Cumberland Bay in Lake Champlain at a cost of US\$35 million. Similar programs have been used to remove toxic 12 13 contaminants from the North American Great Lakes and heavy metals from Lake Dianchi. However, the sediments of a lake are part of a complex ecosystem harboring benthic 14 15 organisms that act as food for higher trophic levels and provide services such as removal of nitrogen. Removing sediment invariably destroys these functions. 16 17 18 The key lesson from these dredging activities is that, if the root cause of the problem

(excess siltation, nutrient loading or toxic contamination) has been controlled, then
 dredging can have a positive effect on a lake. However, dredging, by itself, without load
 control is not cost effective and only a temporary measure and may destroy important
 ecosystem functions.

23

25

24 Harvesting

In many cases, excessive macrophyte growth impedes boat traffic, blocks irrigation channels, interferes with hydropower generation and water treatment plants as well as degrading recreation values. Infested areas can also foster the spread of vector-borne diseases. Harvesting these macrophytes can be a relatively quick and direct way to remove the nuisance weeds as well as the nutrients and any toxic chemicals they may have accumulated.

32

The Bhoj Wetland, Lake Biwa, Chilika Lagoon, Lake Toba and Lake Victoria briefs all discuss how harvesting has been carried out for a variety of reasons. Of special interest are the harvesting programs at Lakes Toba and Victoria which have relied heavily on community involvement. The harvested weeds can sometimes be turned into an

37 economic good by local communities. In the case of Lake Victoria, the weeds were used

for handicrafts. However, harvesting is usually a temporary measure that does not address the root causes leading to excessive macrophytes growth.

40 address the root

1 Chapter 7. Informing the Process: The Role of Science and

2 Monitoring

3

Key Lessons Learned about Information

- Information is costly and never complete so lack of complete information is not a reason for delaying action (note LLDA's "Ready, fire, aim!")
- Local knowledge is often overlooked but can be invaluable; make efforts to tap this source.
- Sharing and utilizing the collective knowledge base for lake management requires ensuring that all
 relevant stakeholders are involved at the beginning in identifying lake problems and helping to
 formulating realistic solutions for them.
- Information not properly "translated" into the language of decision makers and stakeholders is wasted.
- Resident scientific institutions are better than teams of scientist brought in for short-term studies. The nature of lakes (long water residence times and complex dynamics) makes long-term commitment particularly valuable.
- The entire lake basin, not just the lake itself, must be a part of any monitoring program.
- Keep things simple: Simple models can often provide management information equal to that obtained from complex models.

4 5

Information Needs for Lake Basin Management

6 7 Information is necessary for good decision-making, but is costly and never perfect. This is the dilemma facing all decision makers—how to balance the need for further study with 8 9 the need for action. In the absence of any good information, a decision maker could 10 simply flip a coin and hope for the best; this is obviously not desirable. Nor is it desirable for the decision-making process to be paralyzed because 100% certainty has not been 11 obtained about the current state of a lake basin or about the effects a range of policies 12 13 may have on it. This chapter draws lessons from the 28 cases on the search for an 14 appropriate balance.

15

16 Information comes in a variety of forms. Many readers will immediately think of

- 17 "scientific information", such as the values of measured parameters like dissolved oxygen,
- 18 nutrient concentrations and biomass counts that come from scientific studies and
- 19 monitoring programs. The use of this "hard" information is indeed important and forms
- 20 the bulk of this chapter. When devising and implementing policies, however, it is also
- 21 very important to know socio-economic information about the watershed; to know about
- cultural values and people's view of the resource; to know about the institutional and
- 23 policy frameworks that exist—to know what is possible and what is not (see Box 7.4).
- 24

Another valuable source of lake information resides in the memories and experiences of indigenous people living along a lakeshore or in lake basin communities. Often this local knowledge can augment scientific information. In the absence of long-term monitoring programs, it may be the only source of information about a given lake. Thus, in the absence of scientific data, the Ugandan government has been able to use local

- 30 knowledge to identify and protect important fish breeding areas on the eastern shore of
- Lake Albert on the border between Uganda and The Democratic Republic of the Congo.
- No matter what form information takes, the long retention time, complex dynamics, and transmissivity of lakes, mean that good information is particularly valuable in the decision-making process because the cost of a mistake (or missed opportunity) can be very high. Reflecting the experience presented in the 28 cases, this chapter first
- 37 discusses the uses (and "non-uses") of science, then covers monitoring as a special topic
- 38 before considering lessons learned on how information is shared and how information 39 gathering is carried out
- 40

41 Use of Scientific Information

42

The lake briefs contain many examples of how the use of science and other types of information has led to better decision-making. The cases show that science is used in three main ways: (1) to show the limits of resource, (2) to enlighten hard-to-see
connections and (3) to provide novel/innovative solutions.

4 Showing limits to a resource

5 6 Fishing is one of the main resource uses in many of the lakes in this survey; overfishing 7 is one of the main problems. Overfishing threatens lake ecosystems and livelihoods built upon them, especially in developing countries. One of the key contributions of scientific 8 9 studies has been information leading to moratoria on fishing (e.g. Lakes Baringo and Naivasha) or restrictions on allowable technologies (e.g. Lakes George, Ohrid, and 10 11 Victoria). As a result of the policies based on this information, these fisheries have either 12 recovered, or are in better shape than they would have been without the policy change. 13 Another common problem facing many lakes is eutrophication, caused by excessive 14

15 nutrient load (usually phosphorus; occasionally nitrogen) generated from human

- activities in a lake's drainage basin (and sometimes beyond). As illustrated in Figure 1.1,
 a lake can absorb a certain quantity of nutrient load without showing dramatic changes.
 However, there also is often a point at which the loading becomes excessive, leading to a
 major (usually undesirable) shift or imbalance in the lake ecosystem. The extent of the
- 20 nutrient load, along with information on how much is "tolerable" is a key contribution of 21 science. The briefs on Lakes Champlain, Constance and the North American Great Lakes 22 show how far science can actually go in aiding the decision-making process. For example, 23 based on a comprehensive modeling exercise, the United States and Canada acted jointly 24 to reduce the phosphorus load to the Great Lakes, mainly by enhancing phosphorus 25 removal at wastewater treatment plants and by banning P-containing detergents in the drainage basin. It is interesting to note that, even though this policy was successful in 26 27 controlling much of the point-source load to the lakes, recent study has shown that 28 nonpoint sources also must be controlled to fully meet the targets. The Lake Baikal brief 29 also demonstrates how scientific study can reveal that, contrary to popular opinion, 30 nonpoint sources can be a major threat to a lake.
- 31

32 Enlightening hard to see connections33

Lakes are complex. It is not enough for humans to rely on gut feelings arising from
everyday experience, because human judgment is not necessarily suited to
understanding complex ecosystems. A key role of science, therefore, is to shed light on
hard-to-see, indirect connections that are common in lake management. Some examples
include the following:

39 40

> 41 42

> 43

44 45

- For Lake Naivasha, there was a controversy about the causes of the declining water level. A simple model was developed, making use of long-term monitoring data, to show that abstractions for horticulture and not other causes, such as climate variability, were almost certainly responsible for the decline in lake level. As a result, there was widespread acceptance of this cause and an understanding that different interest groups needed to work together to use the lake's resources equitably. (See Box 7.1 for a fuller discussion.)
- For Laguna de Bay, scientific investigations showed the negative effects of a
 hydraulic control structure (designed to stop salt water intrusion from the ocean)
 on the lake fisheries. Eventually, it was decided to halt operation of the structure,
 allowing natural salt water intrusion occur again, resulting in a decrease in
 turbidity and improved conditions for fisheries.
- For Lake Biwa, it was shown that decreasing snowfall amounts over the last few decades along with a weakening of the spring overturn (both possibly related to climate change) led to a decrease in the transfer of large amounts of dissolved oxygen (from snowmelt and from the atmosphere) to the hypolimnion every spring, resulting in possibly anoxic conditions at certain times, with the potential

for large-scale phosphorus release from sediments and a rapid worsening of the eutrophic conditions.

- For the North American Great Lakes, research has shown the connection between
 fossil fuel burning at distant power plants and mercury deposition to the lakes.
 These sources are mostly outside of the watershed but part of the "airshed" and,
 therefore not one of the first pollutant sources normally considered by decision
 makers.
- 7 8 9

1

2

- For Lake Victoria, recent studies (Hecky 2004 on CD-ROM) suggest the role of atmospheric deposition of phosphorus to the lake has been greatly underestimated. If confirmed, this unexpected pathway could have major
- 10
- 11 12

Box 7.1. The Value of Long Term Monitoring and Simple Modeling at Lake Naivasha

implications for managing the lake.

For over 100 years, Lake Naivasha in Kenya had attracted the attention of hydrologists, partly because of the extreme decade-to-decade changes in its surface area, and partly because it remained fresh even though there is no surface outlet. The first phenomenon was eventually explained as being the result of the shallow bathymetry of the lake coupled with climate variability, while the second was found to result from groundwater outflows that carried away dissolved salts.

The lake's water balance became more than a scientific curiosity when, in 1982, a vegetable grower successfully switched to raising flowers for the cut flower trade. This success rapidly led to much of the land around the lake being converted from grazing and cropping to intensive horticulture. By the early 1990s over 100 km² had beer converted to grow flowers for the European cut flower trade. With this growth came an influx of workers. Water was abstracted from the lake, the local aquifers, and the inflowing rivers for the horticultural industry and for domestic use by the rapidly increasing population.

The Lake Naivasha Riparian Association (LNRA), representing landowners and others around the shores of the lake, feared that the lake's water was being over-used by this new development. They also were concerned about pollution of the lake and aquifers from agro-chemicals used by the horticulture industry. However, many horticulturalists did not believe that they were over-using the water resource and pointed out that the lake was higher than it had been in the 1950s prior to the development of their industry. They, in turn, formed the Lake Naivasha Growers Group (LNGG) to counter these and other claims about their industry.

In 1996 the LNRA asked the Ministry of Water Development to study the water balance and the water related environmental impacts. This study was carried out in close collaboration with ITC in the Netherlands. This study was able to settle the issue of lake water use by developing a simple, spreadsheet based water balance model of the lake and its catchment. The model required data on the inflows from the two major rivers; direct rainfall onto, and evaporation from, the lake's surface; and observed lake level and bathymetry. These data were available from a variety of sources—government and private sector—for a perioc from 1932 to the present day (some of the data, such as the local rainfall, were available from 1901).

If a groundwater outflow of 4.6 million m³ per month was allowed for, then the model was able to reproduce the observed lake level from 1932 to 1982 with remarkable accuracy (Figure Box 7.1). 95% of all observed monthly lake levels differed from the modeled levels by 0.52m or less over this period. This accuracy makes the growing discrepancy between the observed and the modeled lake levels after 1982 all the more striking. By 1997 the observed level was 3-4 m below that predicted by the model if there had been no abstractions.

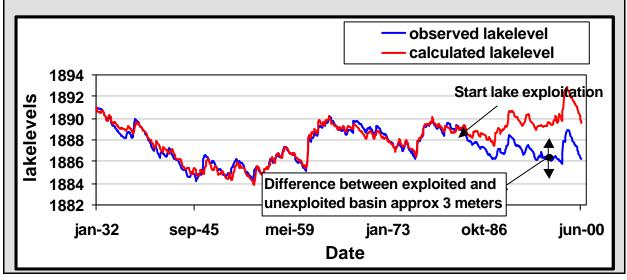


Figure	Box	7.1.	To k	be re	eforma	atted	(color	removed	, dates	put	into	English)	with	data	provide	d from	original
author																	
This ar	gum	nent v	vas s	strei	ngther	ned bי	y the c	coinciden	ce betw	een t	the c	onset of t	this d	ecline	in wate	r level	and the

This argument was strengthened by the coincidence between the onset of this decline in water level and the commencement of horticulture in the area in 1982, and the close match between the annual water deficit by 1997 (60 x 10⁶ m³) and the estimated water use based on the area of horticulture and the crops grown.

These results are now broadly accepted by all within and outside the horticulture industry around Lake Naivasha as showing that the rapid development of the industry and the increase in domestic demand has had a significant impact on the lake level. The LNRA and the LNGG now work more closely together to promote a stronger conservation ethic amongst horticulturalists and to protect the lake's values. Apart from the results of the water balance study the LNGG understand the importance of their activities on the lake.

This conclusive result could not have been achieved without access to long–term reliable monitoring data. It was the closeness of fit between the modeled and the observed lake levels prior to 1982, as much as the steady divergence thereafter that added to the power of the results.

A second notable feature was the simplicity of the modeling. The spreadsheet-based water balance was simple enough to be transferred and used by the LNRA without requiring specialist modeling expertise.

Source: R. Becht and D.M. Harper 2002. Towards an understanding of human impact upon the hydrology of Lake Naivasha, Kenya. Hydrobiologia 488 1-11.

Providing Innovative/Novel Approaches (to solve conflicts)

Finally, science can be used to develop innovative and novel approaches to address a range of lake problems. Some of the major examples from the cases include:

- For the Chilika Lagoon, modeling studies showed how dredging a channel between the lake and the ocean could improve salinity conditions and fishery production in the lake. The channel was dredged, leading to a dramatic recovery in the fishery and prawning catches. Apart from restoring livelihoods fisherfolk, this action also alleviating a major source of conflict among the local communities.
- At Lake Kariba, ecological studies showed how introduction of a fish (*Limnothrissa miodon*) into an ecological niche opened up by the formation of this reservoir provided a commercially valuable fishery.
- For Lake Chad, test releases from the Tiga and Challawa dams showed that such releases could perfectly simulate wet season conditions. This demonstrated that the dam outlets and the Hadejai barrage were adequate for generating artificial flooding in most wetlands in the river system, a previous source of conflict in the drainage basin.
- For the Bhoj Wetland, high levels of heavy metals were shown to result from immersion of idols during religious festivities, an unlikely but significant source.
 Research was used to quantify the problem and show how a solution (moving the ceremony to another site) was possible.
- For the Aral Sea, scientific studies indicated that construction of a dam between the Small Aral and Large Aral seas could maintain the current (greatly reduced) size of the Small Aral given the reduced inflows, and with it, some of the lake's biodiversity and livelihoods for local people.

29 A Note on Modeling

31 The term "modeling" probably conjures up images of computers and mathematics for many readers. But models are not necessarily complex, mathematical or even run on a 32 33 computer. Actually, they can be quite simple: anything that is a generalization of reality 34 that used to gain deeper insight can be is a model. This section on "Use of Science" can, 35 in fact, be thought of as a model: we proposed that science is used for three main purposes in lake basin management; we use case studies to test the "model"; we hope 36 the "model" will be used by readers to better understand the use of science at their own 37 38 lakes.

39

28

30

1 2

3 4

5

6

7

8 9

10

11

12

13

1 The point is: a wide range of models has been used the lakes in this survey; some are as 2 simple as a thought in a decision maker's head like "Nutrients cause eutrophication; our 3 lake is eutrophic; let's cut down on nutrient loading"; some are as complex as threedimensional, time-varying, ecological-physical models. A complex hydro-dynamic model 4 5 of circulation patterns was used to assess the likely benefits from different lake openings 6 in Chilika Lake before the new opening was dredged to the ocean. On the other hand, a 7 model was constructed of Lake Victoria but it has not proven useful to understanding the processes in the lake or been influential with decision makers because of its complexity 8 and data demands. In the case of the North American Great Lakes, the issue of model 9 complexity also was illustrated. Five different eutrophication models, ranging from simple 10 11 phosphorus loading graphs to multi-dimensional, time-varying models, were used to 12 determine the phosphorus target loads for the North American Great Lakes (GLWQA, 13 1978). Despite the range of complexity in the models used, however, they tended to converge on the same target numbers, implying that the simple models were sufficient. 14 15 Lake Naivasha (Box 7.1) provides another example where a simple, spreadsheet models proved to be influential in management. 16

17

18 Overall, the cases indicate that it is important that lake modeling efforts be tailored to 19 the lake being modeled, including ensuring that the model is no more complex than is 20 needed to meet the modeling objective. It is essential that the model design is driven by 21 the managers and other stakeholders and not by the model developers. Initial 22 brainstorming sessions between lake stakeholders and model developers can substantially facilitate this goal. Further, a model for a given lake should not be 23 24 developed without the participation of local experts and officials in its development, as well as those ultimately responsible for its long-term use and refinement. In the absence 25 of specific data and information for a lake being modeled, initiation of specific monitoring 26 27 also may be required to obtain such data. A conceptual model developed at an early 28 stage of a lake management project can help identify data needs and required sampling 29 and monitoring efforts, thereby saving both human and financial resources. 30

It is noticeable how often simple models have proven successful. The lesson is not that simple models are best—it is doubtful if the Chilika Lake requirements could have been met with a simple model—but that the complexity of the model needs to be matched to the capacities of the users, the data available and the demands of the task. If the model development is driven by technological possibilities and not by the needs of the decision makers, then it is very likely that the model will not be used.

38 "Non-use" of Science

The lake briefs also show how a lack of scientific information can constrain the decision
making process. There are a number of cases where science could have been used
effectively, but was not. For example, the lake briefs cited the need for scientific studies
to show:

- The effects of climate change versus local water withdrawals on lake levels in
 Lakes Chad and Baringo;
- The limits to grazing in Lake Baringo;
 - The limits of irrigation on Lake Chad and the Aral Sea;
 - The effects of aquaculture on Lake Toba;
 - The effect of future upstream dams on Tonle Sap; and,
 - The effects of siltation/nutrient loading, before it becomes a major problem, at Lakes Malawi and Tanganyika.

54 The briefs also show how scientific knowledge may have influenced policies before they 55 were implemented. Examples include:

56

39

48

49

50

51

- Health problems resulting from the unexpected release of airborne particles from the exposed lake bed of the desiccated Aral Sea;
- Ecological studies might have shown the detrimental effects from lowering the level of Lake Sevan for hydropower and irrigation; and,
- The effects of soil erosion and nutrients from human wastes on the eutrophic status of Winam Gulf in lake Victoria may have been better appreciated by decision makers if scientific studies had been carried out some years ago.
- 7 8

1

2

3

4

5

6

9 While the briefs do not speculate on why scientific studies were not carried out in these 10 and similar cases, it is possible to use experience from scientific input to management in 11 other fields to suggest the causes. First, decision makers often see scientific inputs as 12 time-consuming, expensive and inconclusive when they need to make decisions quickly. 13 It can be as difficult to persuade scientists that an imprecise but timely answer is 14 required as it is to persuade decision makers that a delay of a year while waiting for 15 factual information can be highly cost-effective in the long-term. Secondly, scientists are often poor communicators with both decision makers and stakeholder groups. They can 16 have difficulty in expressing their findings in ways that have meaning to non-scientists. 17 18 Thirdly, it can be very difficult to get scientists from disciplines as diverse as sociology and hydrology to work together. This integrative approach to scientific studies is 19 20 particularly necessary in understanding lake basins where so many processes (terrestrial 21 and aquatic; biophysical and socio-economic; physical and ecological) interact. Finally, it 22 is worth stating that these typical difficulties affect scientific studies in the developed word as much as they affect the developing world. 23

25 Value of Monitoring

Without carrying out special scientific studies or developing models, simple monitoring of
a lake and its basin can provide valuable insights into a lake's baseline condition, its
change over time including the effects of a given policy.

- 3031 To assess baseline conditions
- 32

24

26

One key purpose of monitoring is to understand the baseline or "normal" conditions of a lake in order to inform policy. Such monitoring programs have been in place at all of the study lakes located in developed countries and in some of the developing countries such as at Laguna de Bay in the Philippines. Two other examples from developing countries illustrate the value of baseline monitoring:

- The Lake Nakuru brief notes that the monitoring data demonstrate the high degree of natural variation that can occur in the lake's water levels due to high levels of evaporation and water abstractions, as well as influences from more global phenomena, such as global climate change. All are causing dramatic changes in the lake's limnological characteristics. By having information on this natural variation, decision makers are better positioned to recognize and evaluate the impacts on the lake from human activities in its drainage basin.
- Monitoring data collected over the past several years at Lake Ohrid suggest that
 both the phytoplankton and zooplankton communities in the lake are changing,
 consistent with the increasing eutrophication of the lake. This baseline monitoring
 makes it unequivocally clear to the basin communities that there is a need to
 control nutrient loads to the lake.
- 51

52 While long-term monitoring is most desirable for providing a baseline, even short-term, 53 historical studies can also prove valuable. For example, Talling's work on Lake Victoria in 54 1961 provides an invaluable baseline on the condition of the lake 40 years ago and was 55 has been used in recent times to show that the lake has changed dramatically from a 56 diatom-dominated to a cyanobacterially-dominated lake. In another example, various studies on the endemic species of Lake Dianchi in the 1950s, have proven useful in
understanding past conditions in that lake and on the need for biodiversity conservation.

4 To assess effects of a policy

5 Decision makers need monitoring of a lake's condition after the implementation of a 6 7 policy change, to properly evaluate the effectiveness of the policy. As discussed in Appendix A, when evaluating policies, it is important to use a with/without project 8 (policy) analysis. The Lake Dianchi brief shows how, even though the pollution load to 9 10 the lake has increased in recent years, polices have led to a divergence between the load generated at source, and the load entering the lake. Without good information on loading, 11 the current policies would probably be declared a failure, when in fact they have had a 12 13 positive effect. The Lake Titicaca brief argued that monitoring made it possible to 14 establish clear priorities during the execution of the Master Plan for Flood Prevention and 15 Resource Management in the basin. On the other hand, the Lake Chad brief noted that, because of the absence of international monitoring bodies, past agreements on the 16 conservation and development of basin resources could not be enforced, resulting in 17 18 detrimental impacts on the lake ecosystem.

19 20 What to monitor

21

22 Experience in monitoring lakes around the world has demonstrated that some 23 parameters that are relatively simple-to-measure can provide a great deal of insight into 24 the condition of a lake and its resources. A list of fundamental in-lake parameters is 25 provided in Box 7.2. Although many additional in-lake and laboratory measurements can be very helpful (e.g., types and numbers of different algal species; composition of rooted 26 27 plants), the list in Box 7.2 can provide a reasonably accurate picture of the major 28 problems facing a lake. However, it will not necessarily indicate the sources of these 29 problems. Because the lake drainage basin is the place where human activities occur, and 30 the root causes of most lake problems, information on drainage basin characteristics may 31 also be needed to help identify sources of lake problems.

32

Box 7.2. Easily obtained parameters for evaluating lake conditions

- Water flushing rate: The faster the flushing rate, the faster a pollutant will be flushed from a lake (assuming the pollutant input has been reduced or eliminated). This is a function of both lake volume (how much water the lake contains) and the water inflows and outflows (the rate at which water enters and leaves a lake, including that lost to evaporation);
- Water transparency: The clearer and more transparent the water, usually the better the water quality;
- PH: This is a measure of the acidity of water. Fish cannot survive above a certain level of acidity;
- Specific conductance: A measure of the quantity of dissolved minerals (e.g., calcium, magnesium, sodium, potassium) in the water, typically the higher the specific conductance, the higher the mineral concentration;
- Dissolved oxygen concentration: The lower the oxygen concentration in the water, the greater the likelihood the oxygen-consuming organisms (especially fish) will be affected. Further, a low oxygen concentration can accelerate the release of nutrients from sediments at the bottom of lakes;
- Biological oxygen demand (BOD) and chemical oxygen demand (COD): These tests provide information on the possibility of pollution from organic substances. A special concern exists in regard to synthetic organic materials (DDT, PCBs, dioxin), which are carcinogenic and can bioaccumulate in the tissues of aquatic and terrestrial organisms, including humans.
- Nutrients: Phosphorus (and nitrogen in some cases) is considered to the nutrient controlling or limiting the maximum biomass of algae and aquatic plants. The higher the concentrations of the biologically-available forms of these nutrients, the greater the potential for nuisance algal blooms and other eutrophication symptoms in a lake;
- Temperature: This parameter has important implications for the physical structure of the water column, as well as maintenance of aquatic life (especially fish). Temperature also controls the rate at which various biophysical and chemical reactions occur;
- Chlorophyll concentration: As a measure of algal biomass (quantity), the larger the chlorophyll concentration, the greater the possibility that the lake will experience nuisance algal blooms and other eutrophication symptoms.
- Heavy metal concentration: Certain heavy metals, particularly those that can bioaccumulate in

the tissues of aquatic and terrestrial organisms, including humans (e.g., lead, mercury), are toxic. The higher the concentration, the greater the potential for negative impacts.

A Note on Serendipity

3 4 Long-term monitoring, even when carried out without an immediate purpose, can have 5 serendipitous effects. For example, the Lake Biwa brief highlights how long-term records 6 of parameters as diverse as snowmelt, temperature, and dissolved oxygen in the 7 hypolimnion all subsequently came together to give indications about the potential 8 effects of global warming on the lake. The North American Great Lakes brief also notes 9 that both formal and informal data sets "become invaluable in monitoring and interpreting ecosystem changes often unrelated to the purpose for which the data were 10 11 originally collected." 12

13 Sharing Information

14

1 2

15 The Lake Nakuru illustrates an important point; the need ensure that research and 16 monitoring findings are available in simplified language that decision makers and 17 resource users can understand. The key lesson learned is that the value of science and 18 monitoring as information for policy makers evaporates if the results and their meaning 19 are not properly transmitted. Some ways in which information can be successfully shared 20 include the following.

21

22 Use of Indicators

23 24 While some of the parameters presented in Box 7.2 are easily understood by the public and decision makers, many are not. Transparency is a fairly easy concept (the less "stuff" 25 26 in the water, the clearer it is: therefore, the deeper one can see into the water); In 27 contrast, the Chemical Oxygen Demand is not. In fact, even professionals can make 28 mistakes about the type of COD measured (e.g., was the oxidizing agent manganese or 29 chromium?). To make the sharing of information as easy as possible, many of the lakes 30 in this study have developed "indicators" of various types of describe lakes or basin 31 conditions.

32

For example, the development of easily understood indicators has been the subject of 33 34 major biennial conferences in the North American Great Lakes basin (described in Box 35 7.3). For Laguna de Bay, the Laguna Lake Development Authority has shown 36 considerable progress in presenting water quality data in a simple schematic diagram 37 called the Water Mondriaan. Inspired by the work of Piet Mondriaan, a famous Dutch 38 painter, it presents technical information in the form of simple lines and colors in an 39 easily understood format for the public and decision-makers. For its International Waters Projects (including # of our study lakes), the GEF has developed a suite of indicators 40 41 (process indicators, stress reduction indicators, environmental status indicators) which are flexibly applied and can allow for easy evaluation of project progress (Duda 2002). 42

43

Box 7.3. Evolving Indicators: The State of the Lakes Ecosystem Conference (SOLEC)

The purpose of the U.S.-Canada Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement (GLWQA) is "to restore and maintain the physical, chemical and biological integrity of the Great Lakes Basin." To evaluate the effectiveness in meeting this goal, the Environmental Protection Agency and Environment Canada biennially host a "State of the Lakes Ecosystem Conference (SOLEC), to report on the state of the Great Lakes ecosystem and the major factors impacting it, including environmental and socioeconomic indicators for assessing these factors. SOLEC also provides a forum for information exchange and discussion among people in all levels of government, corporate and not-for-profit sectors that make decisions affecting the Great Lakes. To date, five SOLEC conferences have been held.

- SOLEC 1994—The first conference addressed the entire lake system, emphasizing aquatic community health, human health, aquatic habitat, toxic contaminants and nutrients, and the changing Great Lakes economy;
- SOLEC 1996—This conference focused on areas where biological productivity was greatest and humans had maximum impacts, including nearshore waters, coastal wetlands, lakeshore lands,

impacts of changing land use, and information availability and management. Also recognized was the need for a comprehensive set of indicators to allow the governments to report on progress made under the GLWQA in a predictable, compatible and standard format;

- SOLEC 1998—This conference focused more formally on the indicator development process, with development of a suite of easily-understood indicators that objectively represented the condition of the Great Lakes ecosystem components, as called for in the GLWQA;
- SOLEC 2000—This conference reported on the state of the Great Lakes on the basis of 80 science-based indicators developed since SOLEC 1998. It also introduced a new group of "Societal Indicators," which seek to measure both human activities impacting the environment, and the societal action(s) taken in response to these environmental pressures;
- SOLEC 2002—This conference continued to update and assess the state of the Great Lakes, focusing on 43 indicator assessments used to provide the most comprehensive analysis to date of the Great Lakes Basin Ecosystem. It also presented a candidate set of "Biological Integrity" indicators, as well as proposed indicators for agriculture, groundwater, forestry and society responses, which, as a part of the "Societal indicator" suite, measure positive human responses to ecosystem pressures.

Work continues on the Great Lakes indicator suite, including efforts to streamline the reporting requirements of the GLWQA, and to report progress under it within the context of management challenges and actions. Further information on the SOLEC indicators can be found on the website: http://www.epa.gov/glnpo/solec/

Museums and Information Centers

4 Lake-based museums or centers are another useful way to ensure that scientific and 5 other types of information are widely disseminated. One example is the realization of a 6 Lake Science Center established at Barkul in the Chilika Lake basin for hydrobiological 7 and other studies during 1999-2002. The Lake Champlain brief highlighted the value of 8 developing a lakefront laboratory and science museum (Leahy Center) as a means of 9 fostering effective lake management within the drainage basin. The Lake Biwa Museum is a long-standing and very successful example of a lake science center devoted to disseminating of information and data about the lake and its problems. Based in part on these successes, establishment of a Lake Resource Centre (LRC) at the Bhoj Wetland has been recommended.

5 Involving People

Finally, many of the case studies show the benefits of directly using people to gather andprovide information on lakes. Examples include the following:

- An interesting example of information gathering by citizens is the "Firefly Monitoring" in the Lake Biwa drainage basin. Akanoi Bay, which feeds into the South Basin of Lake Biwa, used to be famous for fireflies. Changes in landscape (mainly the channeling of rivers and loss of natural habitats), however, have led to a decline in the number of fireflies. A local NGO implemented various restoration projects, with one key indicator of success being an increase in the number of fireflies—a simple, but effective, indicator of restoration progress.
 - In Lake Victoria, water hyacinth expansion and control are carried out and monitored by local fishing communities, who are the ones best placed to carry out such work.
- The Lake Tanganyika Brief notes the importance of involving the local
 communities in data collection. It is noteworthy that the Brief also questions the
 extent of this involvement, since the collection of water samples or reading of
 water/rain gauges may not be appropriate for communities that are not trained to
 undertake such tasks.
- The Lay Monitoring Program in lake Champaign has conducted lakewide monitoring of eutrophication parameters using citizen volunteers every year since 1979. The information collected by these citizen monitors has been used to develop state water quality standards.

22

23

24 25

26

27

28

29

1 Organizing/Carrying out Science and Monitoring

In an ideal world, with no shortage of funding or and trained staff, each lake basin would
have a resident institute—recognized for its capabilities and impartiality—carrying out
both required and elective research and monitoring and coordinating information
gathering between various sectors. This actually is close to reality for some of the survey
lakes. Where funds are scarce, however, we see fragmentation and a reliance on
international funding—not necessarily problems, but also not ideal.

10 Resident Institutes

11

12 Lake Champlain (along with Lake Biwa and the North American Great Lakes) provides an 13 example of just how important and effective a role science and monitoring can play. The 14 Lake Champlain Basin Program has always sought to base planning and policy decisions 15 on sound scientific information. The brief contends that, without this strong foundation in sound science, a watershed management program will not necessarily produce the 16 desired outcomes. Nearly two dozen representatives from the technical community 17 18 throughout the lake basin have been brought together in a Technical Advisory Committee 19 (TAC) to examine the scientific issues of every major policy question, and provide policy 20 and budget guidance to the Steering Committee each year. The TAC also reviews 21 research and implementation projects to ensure both scientific merit and successful 22 conclusion. Moreover, it is chaired by a non-governmental scientist who also holds a seat 23 on the Lake Champlain Steering Committee. When scientific information is not adequate 24 to guide a management decision, the LCBP allocates funds to support focused and timely 25 research or monitoring to address the knowledge gap. This effort, however, does not 26 come cheap. Monitoring environmental conditions in the lake basin typically requires up 27 to \$300,000, a sum of money usually not available for most lakes.

28

29 Internationally funded programs

30

For lakes in developing countries without the ability to maintain resident programs
international studies and funding can play an important role. For example, lakes like
Malawi, Victoria and Tonle Sap have received much attention from foreign scientists and
the information gathered has been used in decision making.

35

Several of the cases indicate the need for local training and ongoing support to ensure the sustainability of such internationally-funded programs. In Lake Tanganyika for example, except for the CLIMLAKE project, all the training conducted only lead to certificates, rather than higher degrees. In such situations, the riparian states are forced to rely heavily on expatriates to undertake tasks which would otherwise have been undertaken by local experts. The Laguna Lake Development Authority (LLDA) provides a contrary example, in which local ability was well supported and developed.

- 43
- 44 Fragmentation

45

46 The Lake Toba brief illustrated the shortcomings when the agencies conducting various 47 research projects did not readily communicate with one another. Instead they kept much 48 of their results and data to themselves for reasons of prestige and dominance. As a result 49 there is no sound, comprehensive research project covering the major aspects and 50 concerns of the lake.

51

52 The same problem arises between countries. In the Lake Xingkai/Khanka Brief it was 53 stated that, although China and Russia developed their own monitoring and information 54 management systems for the lake, a lack of adequate technical and institutional capacity 55 to collect, analyze and store relevant data has prevented harmonized and cost-effective 56 management for the transboundary environmental issues. A UNEP Diagnostic Analysis 57 brought teams of Chinese and Russian scientists together to produce a definitive document. The GEF's Transboundary Diagnostic Analysis (TDA) process has helped
 countries exchange information and work together in several of the study lakes (e.g.
 Lake Titicaca and the Caspian Sea).

4 5

How much information is enough?

6

7 Like money, no amount of information ever seems to be enough: almost every brief cites the need for more information, for more research, for more monitoring. Even in cases 8 9 where a tremendous amount of money has been spent on information the call is 10 unambiguous. The Lake Champlain brief states that additional research and monitoring efforts are needed to better understand the sources and effects of toxic pollutants in the 11 Basin, whilst the Lake Biwa brief states that the funds wasted for the lack of a scientific 12 13 approach in managing the lake far outweighed the required investment—another clear call for more scientific information. 14 15

One lesson learned from this chapter is that the lack of information should not impede action. The Laguna Lake Development Authority (LLDA) has adopted the slogan "Ready, fire, aim!" for good reason. The LLDA has not been paralyzed by incomplete information; instead they have learned while acting and, as a result, have been successful in their management efforts.

21

Finally, acquiring a sufficient level of information does not necessarily have to be
 prohibitively expensive: the Lake Nakuru brief cites the development of a cost-effective

package of practices for environmental monitoring, noting that it is not likely to cost

25 more than 1% of the annual revenue generated at the Lake Nakuru National Park in

which the lake is located. A checklist of the essential information and data for lake

27 management is given in Box 7.4 28

Box 7.4. The Information Bare Essentials: A Checklist for Decision Makers

- Scientific/Technical Prospects and Options—What is the current condition of a lake (i.e., current water quantity and quality, and changes in them over time)? What is the status of its biological communities? What are the root causes, within and outside the lake drainage basin, for the observed problems? What are the lake management options and what are their possible outcomes? How can progress in lake recovery be evaluated? What is the expected degree of, and recovery time frame for, specific lake problems?
- Sociological Perspectives—What is the cultural history of lake use in its drainage basin? What customs, social mores or religious beliefs influence the use of lakes and their resources? To what extent can the public and other lake stakeholders be mobilized to help identify and implement effective lake management efforts?
- Economic Characteristics—What are the economic characteristics of the drainage basin stakeholders, including the relevant governmental management bodies? Are sufficient financial resources available for sustainable management interventions? Is poverty alleviation linked to sustainable lake use? What economic incentives, penalties or subsidies exist to facilitate lake management interventions and what are their past experiences?
- Institutional and Legislative Frameworks— What is the existing legislative framework in the drainage basin? Do adequate institutions and laws exist to regulate, protect or guide the sustainable use of a lake and its resources, or are new or modified ones needed? Do different lake management institutions have overlapping or conflicting mandates? Are existing laws and regulations enforced in a consistent, equitable manner? What other legislative incentives exist and what are their experiences?
- Political and Governance Structures—What are the political realities regarding the sustainable use of lakes and their resources within the lake drainage basin? Is the political structure amenable to public inputs? Are current politicians and government officials providing the necessary leadership to facilitate needed lake management interventions? Is the lake governance process transparent, equitable and accessible to the public and other lake stakeholders?

1 2

Chapter 8. Mobilizing Sustainable Funding

Key Lessons Learned about Financing

- Although international finance is attractive (it often comes as grants that do not have to be re-paid) international finance is also short-term and often targeted to specific issues. Consequently decisior makers need to develop both local and national level sources of funding.
- Financing for capital infrastructure investments usually comes from the national level or from international resources; local level funding is an important source of money to help meet routine recurrent expenditures.
- Financing for routine monitoring and lake scientific labs is particularly problematic; this is one are where external financing may play an important catalytic role but should not be relied upon for long term funding.
- It is easier to levy local fees when the money stays in part in local coffers (to pay for current needs) and locals have a say over its use.
- To ensure global benefits from lake projects, particularly in the case of international lakes, a programmatic approach is better than a project-by-project approach. In order to sustainably provide global benefits, global action and close co-ordination among national management agencies is required. This is one case where external funding may be necessary to implement the new management regime.

3

Improved lake basin governance costs money—money for new or existing institutions
and staff, money for investments in discrete projects, money to compensate "losers"
when new policies are introduced. Sustainable lake basin governance means sustainable
financing—and financing that is sufficient in quantity and guaranteed over time. Neither
condition is likely to be met in many of the world's lake basins.

9

27

31

32

33

34 35

36

In an ideal (and completely unrealistic) world all stakeholders using or affected by a lake and its basin would contribute to the costs of actions and policies needed to maintain ecological integrity and economic sustainability. However, in most lake basins the numbers of people involved are large and the ability of many to pay is very limited. In addition, there is often no effective institutional mechanism to collect money from individuals and make the required investments or payments. And the administrative and financial costs of collecting fees or charges can be substantial.

Lake basin decision makers face two major types of costs: capital investments—usually large and "lumpy" investments in infrastructure like sewage treatment or lake hydraulic works—and day-to-day management costs—largely salaries and modest capital costs and usually referred to as "recurrent costs". In most developing countries neither cost is met from local resources. This chapter examines what a decision maker can do to at least increase funding for regular, on-going expenses. Capital investments will probably have to continue to be paid by others—national governments or foreign donors.

26 The Decision Maker's Complaint

Securing sufficient financial resources is a constant concern. A few excerpts from the
Lake briefs make interesting reading:

- "the Government has been suffering from acute shortages of resources and this has weakened the capacity of remaining extension staff to carry out its activities" Lake Nakura Brief
 - "it is unclear how successful projects developed under the GEF project will continue to receive funding now that the (GEF) project is over" Lake Baikal Brief
- "lack of financial support in general and poor working conditions in particular make it hard for the preserve to function in any normal way" Lake Issyk-kul Brief
- 40 "the assessment rates overall sustainability as unlikely. Staff incentives
 41 were reduced with a return to Government salaries. Malawi cannot provide

1	sufficient budget to sustain the lake research program" Lake Malawi/
2	Nyasa Brief
3	
4	Around the world, in rich and poor countries alike, decision makers complain that
5	resources are not enough to do all that needs to be done. While this complaint may be
6	true for almost any natural resource, improved lake governance, and the financing that
7	supports it, is often attainable if one is careful in resource use, creative in identifying new
8	sources of funding, and inclusive in involving stakeholders. For example, judicious
9	investment in knowledge gathering (monitoring and scientific studies) can help target
10	management interventions so that funds are used efficiently; and, high rates of fee
11	collection can be achieved if users of the lake's resources are given a genuine say in the
12	management of the lake basin.
13	
14	In addition, since money is transferable between uses (or, as economists say, fungible),
15	the challenge for decision makers is usually to increase the <i>aggregate</i> amount of money
16	available, regardless of the source. While it is often true that international donor funds
17	are often tied to specific activities or investments, these same donor funds are usually
18	additional money and they free-up other money that is not "tied" and can then be
19	redirected to other uses. Consequently decision makers often focus as much on
20	increasing total funding (that is, increasing the size of the "financial pie") as they do on
21	the allocation of those funds (who or what receives the "slices" of the same pie).
22	the anotation of those rands (who of what receives the sinces of the same pie).
23	As mentioned in Chapter 4 on policy, political will is an essential ingredient in
24	increasing support for and funding for improved lake management. Any funding scheme
25	has to be implemented on order to collect revenues, and this requires political will. The
26	second essential ingredient is public acceptance and understanding of the new
27	system—and this implies education and awareness building.
28	system and this implies education and awareness banding.
29	This chapter considers three distinct sources of potential funding for improved lake basin
30	governance, and presents examples and the opportunities and cautions about each
31	source of funding. Most of this funding will be for recurrent costs, also referred to as O, M
32	and R—operations, maintenance and replacement—and not for initial capital costs. These
33	three main sources of funding include the following:
34	
35	 Local sources (including user fees and other locally generated revenues),
36	 National level financial resources, and
37	 International funding including both bi-lateral and multi-lateral funds (including
38	the GEF).
39	
40	Selected examples from the 28 case studies are given to illustrate each type of funding.
41	
42	Locally Generated Funds
43	
44	A somewhat new source of funding for improved lake basin governance is locally
45	generated revenues, either payment for services (e.g. user fees like drinking water
46	charges or recreational charges) or fines for pollution (e.g. pollution charges like

45 generated revenues, either payment for services (e.g. user fees like drinking water 46 charges or recreational charges) or fines for pollution (e.g. pollution charges like 47 wastewater discharge fees). These funds are collected from various groups and include 48 those who are direct users (and beneficiaries) of the lake resource such as fishermen, 49 those who benefit from the lake as a source of ecosystem services (e.g. various people 50 who benefit from flood mitigation, improved water supply, or enhances amenity values), 51 or those groups whose activities pollute or harm the lake (e.g. industries or municipal 52 wastewater disposal systems).

53

In this case the definition of "locally generated funds" is broad enough to include
revenues from those downstream users who are directly linked via the ecosystem. This
means that a downstream beneficiary may be an important source of funding for decision
makers. This is especially true if the downstream uses are high valued uses such as

drinking water or hydropower generation (and these same users also have a high abilityto-pay, that is, they are well-off). For example, Lake Biwa is fortunate to have large and
wealthy downstream stakeholders. Lake Biwa has been very successful in attracting
money from Osaka and Kobe for investment and management costs to help protect the
Lake's resources and ensure continuing water supply (both quantity and quality) to these
large urban areas. In fact, total public investment in the Lake Biwa region for lake
management totals hundreds of millions of dollars.

8

Private funding is a subset of locally generated funding and is usually only important 9 10 when the number of stakeholders is very small and the community is both relatively rich 11 and socially cohesive. One can think of small lakes with a small number of owners/lake 12 users who band together to make needed investments and enforce certain management 13 policies. This has been observed around some small lakes in the US where the primary use is recreational, and in fact most "externalities" have been "internalized" (see 14 15 Appendix A). This is only rarely seen in practice (usually where the lake is small and the number of stakeholders is also small) and almost never observed in larger lakes or where 16 large numbers of stakeholders are involved. Private funding via donations can be 17 18 important additional source of money (sometimes targeted to specific management 19 objectives such as biodiversity or cultural conservation).

20

Although not discussed in the Lake Sevan Brief, a recent study (Wang 2003) has 21 22 examined the willingness-to-pay (WTP) of Armenians, both inside Armenia but more importantly, the larger and wealthier community of Armenians living abroad. The initial 23 24 results for residents of Yerevan, the capital, indicate a total WTP of around \$18 per 25 person. This is based on a monthly payment of \$0.50 per month for a 3 year period) to stabilize the lake level and prevent any further lowering of the lake level. Although 26 seemingly not a large sum per person, this is a substantial WTP given the very low 27 28 income levels in Armenia. Additional research is looking at expatriate Armenian WTP 29 measures and these numbers are expected to be much higher. The challenge, of course, will be to design an effective policy tool to collect some of the WTP, both within Armenia 30 31 and abroad.

33 User Fees

34

32

35 Locally generated (and locally retained) financial resources often take the form of some 36 sort of "user fee"-perhaps from fishermen or recreational user, or from those who 37 consume a lake resource such as drinking water. A user fee is a charge that is paid by someone who derives a benefit from the direct, or indirect, use of the lake and therefore 38 has both an interest it the conservation and management of the lake's environment, and 39 40 an implicit responsibility to help pay for that conservation and management. Education and public awareness are central components of any new user fee system. In Box 8.1, 41 42 for example user fees from fish pen operators in Laguna de Bay in the Philippines have become an important source of funds for the local lake development and management 43 44 authority. This example also illustrates the importance of agreeing on a distribution of the 45 funds with responsible institutions, such as local government, and those paying the fees. 46

1

Box 8.1. User Fees in Laguna de Bay, the Philippines

The Laguna de Bay managers have used several different types of user fees to help both generate revenues and provide an incentive for polluters to reduce pollution.

Introduced in 1997, the Environmental User Fee System (EUFS) is designed to help reduce pollution loading in the lake system and is composed of a fixed fee and a variable fee. The fixed fee covers the administrative costs of implementing the system and the variable component is based on the BOD concentration of the effluents. The current threshold level for BOD is 50 mg/L. The combination of a fixed fee (a Command and Control measure) and the variable fee (an economic-based instrument) has been effective in both meeting administrative costs and encouraging firms to reduce their pollutant levels. The EUFS has been implemented in stages with the larger firms affected first.

Revenues from a separate user fee on fish pen operators are shared between the local government units and the Laguna de Bay Lake development Authority (LLDA). The fee, currently about US\$120 per ha of fishpen, generates revenues for improved lake basin management and makes the lakeshore communities active stakeholders in lake basin management.

These two fees have been effective in achieving two important goals – developing a source of local funding for the LLDA and lake shore communities, and providing an incentive for industrial polluters to reduce their emissions to the lake.

2

3 Tourism, both national and international, is another excellent example where user fees 4 (admission fees, daily use charges) can be developed and begin to produce revenue for improved lake management. This is a well-established practice and has been 5 implemented in a number of lakes where tourism is an important use-for example, in 6 7 Lake Nakuru, visitors to the national park to see the flamingos all pay a user fee. This practice could be expanded to other lakes, especially where there is a clearly defined 8 lake-based recreational activity (c.f. Lake Baringo). An important ingredient for success, 9 10 however, is the local retention of at least part of the fees collected, couples with public 11 education and communication on the link between resource management and economic 12 activities. 13 14 Setting user fees requires considerable judgement. In almost all cases the user fee is less that the true value of the resource being used. This is commonly observed in water 15 16 supply systems where user fees often just cover operations and maintenance (0 & M)

17 costs but do not pay any of the initial capital costs. In irrigation systems user fees often 18 do not even cover O & M costs. This is neither surprising nor a major problem. People do 19 not like to pay for the services of any ecosystem (there is a feeling that natural resources 20 are a gift from nature and should be free!). In addition, setting ANY user fee begins to 21 establish the principle that these resources have value (and alternative uses or 22 opportunity costs). Thus implementing even a partial user fee system starts to send the 23 correct market signal and can begin to generate some revenues for improved

24 management.

25

Successful introduction of user fees also requires that the population being taxed
understand why the fee is being levied and also the population see some result in terms
of improved management. If these requirements are not met collection of the fees
becomes even more difficult and an adversarial relationship between the users and the
decision makers may develop.

- 31
- 32 Pollution Charges

33

Fees can also be levied on those whose actions potentially *damage the lake* and its sustainability. *Pollution charges* or *levies* are therefore a potential source of funding and serve a double purpose—if there is pollution this charge helps generate revenue to address the pollution issues or compensate those who are hurt by the pollution. In addition, pollution charges also serve as an incentive for polluters to decrease their pollution and therefore avoid paying the pollution charges. In theory pollution charges 1 could be paid directly by the polluter to those whose welfare is hurt by the pollution. This 2 is administratively very hard to do so usually these charges are collected by some central 3 institution and then payments are allocated to various groups—both those whose welfare 4 is hurt as well as other stakeholders in the basin. In some cases the charges go to the 5 central treasury and the decision makers must fight to get some share back to pay local 6 compensation. (This is also often the case with user fees.) In Lake Dianchi in China,

pollution fees are used (in addition to more commonly observed water supply charges),

8 to raise revenues. Box 8.2 discusses the situation in Lake Dianchi.

Box 8.2. User fees in Lake Dianchi, China

Lake Dianchi near Kunming, China is the center of a major urban, industrial and tourism region. Pollution from industry, agriculture and urban sewage was a major problem. The lake authorities have made major investments in sewage and wastewater control. In the year 2000 they spent over RMB 340 Million (about US\$ 41.5 million). To address the ongoing problem of industrial pollution, the lake authorities have combined a pollution levy system with a loan/ grant program for installation of pollution control equipment.

Starting 15 years ago old industries were charged a pollution levy if their discharges exceeded the stated discharge standard. In addition, the 1988 Dianchi Protection Ordinance prohibits the introduction of any new polluting industries in the Lake Dianchi catchments.

Existing industries, when taking actions to control pollution, were provided with loans from the government for the required investments. These loans were funded by a combination of the environmental pollution levy receipts plus special funds allocated for Lake Basin environmental improvements. As an added incentive, if it was shown that after the pollution controlling investments were made that the industry could then meet the pollution discharge standards, the loan was converted to a grant and no repayment was required. By combining government investments, pollution levies, and a loan/ grant program for pollution controlling investments, the lake management authorities have begun to tackle the major problem of pollution of this important lake.

10

o

Whether it is a user fee or a pollution charge, the idea is to establish a connection 11 between those who benefit from using the lake resources (or negatively affect its 12 13 quality), and the costs required to maintain the same resource. These fees and charges 14 help to generate revenue for improved management. A user fee or a pollution charge 15 also reinforces the idea that a lake and its resources have value and therefore have to be used wisely. As was discussed in Chapter 2, free resources and free goods tend to be 16 17 overexploited and poorly managed. Resource degradation is common. Think of the 18 condition of many open access resources including oceans and seas, lakes and public 19 parks. When money changes hands (and a market is functioning) it sends the correct 20 signal: a lake and its resources are valuable and scarce, and one has to use the lake 21 resources wisely. Fees and charges help to re-enforce this message (it costs you money 22 to use it) and also help provide funds for needed conservation and protection (to ensure 23 availability of the resource over time). 24

25 An independent source of funding?

In addition to creating a cause-effect link between the resource and those who use the resource, user fees and pollution charges also have the very attractive feature of *helping to create local sources of financing, both in terms of collection and control.* This is important to any decision maker since these funds are not entirely dependent on requests to the regional or national treasury. And, as was stated at the beginning of this chapter, nationally-allocated funds are never sufficient in amount nor guaranteed over time.

However, one major potential problem with locally generated financing remains. In many countries the legal framework states that all money collected from user fees have to go to the National Treasury, and money is the re-distributed and allocated based on certain principles. While this approach is the correct one from a pure public finance perspective (taxes and revenues that are collected should be "pooled" and used in their "best and highest valued" uses) the fact is that very little money normally flows back to the lake for improved lake management.

1 2 The lack of uncertainty of having access to collected money creates an obvious problem 3 with incentives to collect these fees-local managers are unlikely to collect money 4 rigorously if little or none of the money is then available for local purposes. One potential 5 solution to this problem is to devise a revenue sharing scheme whereby any revenue collected is divided between the generating unit (e.g. the lake management authority) 6 7 and the local or national government. In the case of Laguna de Bay, fees from fish pen operators are in fact split between the lake authority (LLDA) and local governments. 8 9 Although national government (and Ministries of Finance or the Treasury in particular) do 10 not like "revenue-sharing" proposals, an argument could be made that this approach 11 actually INCREASES resources available at both levels—local and national, since splitting SOME revenue may generate more resources to both sides that not splitting NO 12 13 revenues! (Put another way-50% of "something" is more than 100% of "nothing"!!!) 14

An interesting example of precisely this sort of approach is found in Mexico where user fees for national marine parks in the Yucatan Peninsula are now split between the park managers and the local communities, rather than going directly to Mexico City (and never being sent back for local use). To implement this idea, however, took several years of work and the passage of a law in the Mexican Congress expressly allowing this form of local revenue retention and revenue sharing.

21

22 The Principle of Cross-subsidization

23 24 One well-accepted financing principle is that of cross-subsidization. That is, certain 25 activities (or uses of a lake, for example) can generate a lot of money while other activities generate very little or no money. The principle of cross-subsidization states that 26 27 "excess" money can be collected from one use to help pay other expenses. Whether or 28 not this should only be done within a sector (e.g. lake fisheries, tourism) or within the 29 lake basin, is a political, not an economic question. Cross-subsidization is justified by the transmissivity of the lake ecosystem and the differing abilities of different parts of that 30 31 ecosystem to generate revenues to meet the management needs that affect all users. 32

Sectoral ministries (e.g. the ministry of fisheries or agriculture) typically only look at their 33 narrow sectoral boundaries. Administrative boundaries are just as much a barrier and 34 35 only in a few cases are the lake basin and the administrative boundary the same (such as 36 is the case for Lake Biwa). This leads to one of the key lessons from studies of integrated 37 watershed management-plan in an integrated framework and implement along sectoral lines. Lake Basin authorities, especially if they have independent sources of funding, can 38 help promote this process by allocating money across different sectoral needs, but 39 40 sectoral authorities (like a lake fishing commission) is almost never able to break out of 41 the sectoral approach.

42

43 Should people pay for "gifts of nature/basic human rights"?

44

Another issue is whether or not it is appropriate to charge a user fee for a "gift of God" or a basic human need/ right like drinking water. Regardless of ones views on the inherent "right" of people to water, user charges can be justified by the argument that what is being paid for is the *service provided* (e.g. the costs of supplying water), not the resource itself (the water).

50

51 Merely saying that "water should be free to all" (or parks or open spaces should also be 52 free) does nothing to help ensure its timely provision. Some countries have enshrined 53 certain "human necessities" in their Constitution, but this is a political issue separate 54 from managing and maintaining the resource. 55

1 The special case of the "poorest of the poor"

2 3 It has to be recognized that in some situations part of the stakeholder population is truly 4 so impoverished that they cannot pay anything to help better manage the resource that 5 they depend on. However, rather than starting with this as the assumption for all 6 populations, the special case argument needs to be examined carefully in each case and 7 justified. Often it can be shown that the poor pay more because of the non-delivery of services than would be the case with basic public provision of certain services (such as 8 potable drinking water). In addition, the important point about locally-generated funding 9 10 is to establish a cause-effect link between the resource and those who benefit from its 11 use. This helps create general public awareness and expectations about appropriate and 12 effective management. Both help create political will to do better resource management. 13

14 In conclusion, it is not possible to say what percent of current lake management funding should be locally generated (and retained). While locally generated funds are probably 15 still only a small share of lake management funding in most places, it is the part of the 16 17 funding package that has the most potential for future growth. In addition, it is the only 18 source of funding over which decision makers and local authorities have control. As the

19 appreciation of the wide range of lake-associated benefits grows (e.g. see earlier

20 discussions in Chapter 2), new ways to generate funds locally will develop (Chapter 4

21 discussed a number of different policy instruments or tools that can be applied).

22 23 National Funding

24

25 Most lake management programs rely, entirely or in part, on financing from the national (or provincial/state) government, either through sectoral ministry funding or via special 26 27 appropriations for integrated lake management committees. The Lake Briefs provide 28 details on lake management institutions for lakes as diverse as Victoria, Constance, the 29 Great Lakes, Biwa and Toba. Several of these are international lakes, while Biwa and 30 Toba are national lakes. Still, the intentions are similar-to bring together various 31 interested stakeholders in a meaningful way to improve lake management.

32

33 National level funding (and here this refers to any funding above the local level and implies that funding comes from general tax revenues that are collected and then re-34 35 allocated) can be a major source of money but is often insufficient in amount and may 36 not be sustainable over time. This is particularly true if the lake in question is remote or 37 populated with a minority population group.

38

One area where national funding mat be both appropriate and essential is capital 39 40 infrastructure investments. These large, "lumpy" investments-for such things as 41 wastewater treatment or major water supply projects-are rarely funded at the local 42 level. Local resources are often not sufficient or the benefits may be quite wide-ranging 43 and long-term so national level funding is appropriate. See the Lake Dianchi and Lake 44 Toba briefs for examples of national funded infrastructure investments. 45 46 Combining locally generated resources with national funding may be an attractive

47

alternative to relying solely on national funds. National funds are usually more 48 "fungible"—they can be used for any of a variety of purposes, while locally-generated 49 funds may have a narrow sectoral focus. For example, local user fees from fishermen will augment available resources but will probably only be spent on fish management—not on 50 other lake management problems, some of which may actually create more benefits per 51 dollar spent.

52 53

The institutional (and political) issue of separating sources of finance, from the uses of 54 those resources, remains. Although lake basin management authorities (or international 55 lake commissions) have the responsibility to look broadly and identify the most 56

appropriate investments or actions that are needed wherever they occur in the basin, it is 57

not always easy to do so. There will always be pressures from the sectoral ministries, or
the more vocal groups, to focus narrowly. Worldwide, resource allocation decisions are
decided as much by political power and political will, as by dispassionate analysis.

5 External Funding

6

4

Faced with this funding challenge—to rely on locally generated funds (but a source that
may be quite small in total amount), or to rely on national funds and the fierce funding
competition between the various sectors, ministries and regions of the country—many
decision makers look abroad to external funding.

11

External aid is seen as a way around two important financing problems: first, increasing the amount of money/resources available, and second, breaking the link between the sectoral ministry/source of funds and their use and allowing a wider variety of management issues to be tackled. External funding can be either from bilateral (country to country assistance) or multilateral sources (regional blocks like the European

- 17 Community or United Nations agencies).
- 18

19 About half or more of lakes in the set of 28 lake briefs have some sort of external 20 support. External funding is often used for infrastructure investments (e.g. sewage and 21 wastewater treatment, water control structures) but also often helps pay research and 22 management costs. The external funding ranges from a marginal share of the total to the 23 bulk of management funding. For these jointly funded activities to be fully effective, 24 there needs to be a clear agreement between the parties about how their respective 25 commitments will be integrated and a mechanism to make sure that each party abides by its commitment. For example, the Japanese government funded the expansion of the 26 27 Nakuru (Kenya) town water supply and upgraded the town's sewerage treatment plants 28 to treat any consequent increase in effluent being discharged to Lake Nakuru. However, 29 the benefits from these investments are not being fully realized because of limited 30 commitment by the Kenyan government to its obligations to water and wastewater 31 management.

32

33 External support can take the form of **loans** that have to be repaid (e.g. loans, both "hard" and "soft", from the World Bank to a country for lake management as is being 34 35 proposed for the Aral Sea). "Hard" loans carry market-determined interest rates; "soft" 36 loans carry below-market, highly subsidized interest rates. More desirable from the 37 perspective of decision makers are grants-money that does not have to be repaid. Most bilateral assistance (such as from the European Community and individual countries) and 38 GEF funding are in the form of grants. Some lake projects combine grants with loans. 39 40 The first phase of the Lake Victoria Environmental Management Program, for example, 41 has two major sources of external funding, a GEF grant of about \$33 million, and a "soft" 42 IDA loan of about \$43 million.

43

44 The Special Case of the Global Environmental Facility (GEF)

45

46 While most bilateral or multilateral funding is provided to promote various social/ecological objectives (e.g. poverty alleviation, ecosystem protection, regional 47 48 development), the Global Environment Facility (GEF) is the only funding that is based solely on the fact that lakes have global environmental benefits (for either biodiversity or 49 the management of international waters) and that their proper management implies 50 51 management costs that exceed what a country would be willing/able to undertake based on estimates of national benefits and costs. Hence GEF funding is designed to cover the 52 "incremental costs" of an activity-those costs that produce international environmental 53 benefits, as opposed to national-level benefits. The latter, national benefits, are supposed 54 to be paid for by the countries themselves and are not normally eligible for GEF funding. 55 56

1 This rationale for GEF funding becomes more complicated in the case of international 2 lakes, since even though the ecosystem may be whole and linked, the management 3 actions, and the incidence of benefits and costs, may vary greatly between riparian countries. If there is a "shared vision" for lake management, and the countries share 4 5 many other characteristics, the chances for success improve considerably. In the case of 6 Lake Peipsi, the governments of Russia and Estonia have signed three agreements 7 (fisheries, environment and water use) and have set up a Transboundary Water Commission to improve the management of the lake. While these actions may fall short 8 9 of a formal joint vision for the lake, they represent sectoral agreements and ensure that there are on-going discussions over a wide range of issues so that each country is well 10 11 aware of the intentions of the other and any problems that may arise. In other cases the riparian countries are still working towards common goals for shared lakes. For example, 12 13 the development and protection of Lake Victoria has been hampered for many years by the absence of an overarching agreement between the three riparian countries (Tanzania, 14 15 Kenya, Uganda). However, under the auspices of the East African Community, the three countries are now drafting a Protocol for Sustainable Development of the Lake Victoria 16 Basin and plan to establish a Lake Victoria Basin Commission as part of that Protocol. If 17 18 successful, this initiative will lay the foundation for a joint approach to managing the lake 19 and much of its catchment (the two upstream countries of Rwanda and Burundi are not 20 yet part of the EAC).

21

22 In still some other cases, the world community seems much more concerned with what happens than the riparian states. Lake Malawi provides a case in point. This lake, 23 24 recognized to be the most bio-diverse in the world, is central to the economy of Malawi 25 but of less importance to the other two riparian countries—Tanzania and Mozambique. Malawi operates a fishing industry and an aquarium fish trade, the latter of which exploits 26 27 some of the highly localized and rare fiah species. The latter two countries are developing 28 agriculture and tourism within the lake's catchment with the potential for adding 29 sediment and nutrients to this important international waterbody. There is considerable 30 international concern about the threat to the lake's biodiversity and a number of bi-31 lateral and multi-lateral projects have been funded to help preserve the biodiversity and 32 promote environmentally responsible fisheries. However, without an agreement (or even 33 a mechanism for discussions) between the three countries these international efforts are unlikely to be beneficial in the long term. 34

35

External funding (bi-lateral, multi-lateral, GEF) has benefits and costs. It allows decision
makers to do more by expanding the financial "pie" and therefore helps pay for various
new policies and investments, but may come with certain conditions or biases. In
addition, external funding is usually not sustainable over time. The average GEF project
is a one-off investment over 3 to 5 years.

41

42 External funding—necessary? sufficient? 43

Some successful cases of lake management have no or very limited external funding
(e.g. Lake Dianchi in China) and, conversely, some lakes with large amounts of external
funding have had very little success in implementing effective management plans.

47

Funding, either domestic or external, must be seen as a "necessary but not sufficient condition" for effective lake management. And development experience in general has shown that long-term financing commitments have to come from domestic sources.
Consequently there are important issues about how external funding can be best used and how to ensure a smooth transition to national or local sources of funding.

53

54 The Sustainability of External Funding, or, is there life after external funding?? 55

56 One of the strong lessons from the review of the 28 lake briefs is that it is very important 57 that external funds *play a catalytic, rather than an implementing role* in lake

1 management. There are too many examples of foreign donors financing program or 2 project implementation, with the activities ending as soon as the funding from external 3 sources ends. Effective financing requires that foreign resources help create the 4 conditions whereby local or national resources can continue with management after the 5 external funding ends. One problem noted in several Lake briefs, is the tendency for the external funds to be used to pay for international consultants and not being used to build 6 7 capacity in the developing countries. Another related problem is that when externally funded salaries are considerably higher than government salaries, it can be very difficult 8 to retain staff once the external funding ends and salaries revert to the old schedule (e.g. 9 10 Lake Malawi).

11

It has been argued that GEF-type payments for global environmental benefits should be 12 13 on-going since the benefits are on-going. This argument for "international funding for international lakes" implies a longer-term commitment to international lakes of global 14 15 importance. Although this is clearly desirable to do and conceptually correct, in practice it is not very feasible. The history of international funding is not very promising for this 16 type of initiative. "Donor fatigue" is observed in all sectors, and what is attractive for 17 18 international funding today may receive only limited support in a few years time. 19 Sometimes external funding is used to help set up trust funds or other mechanisms to 20 help ensure continued funding. Bi-lateral and multi-lateral donors, however, have not 21 been willing to commit to open-ended funding commitments. 22

One potential promising future source of longer term funding is international payment
for environmental services. If global markets develop for certain environmental
services (such as we see in the earliest stages for carbon sequestration, perhaps for
biodiversity protection in the future) these global markets may form a way in the future
to ensure continuing external funding for lake management. This has not happened yet,
however, and therefore is not yet an appropriate way to plan for longer-term financial

29 30 support.

31 The idea of user fees that was introduced earlier, therefore, offers one avenue for 32 developing new sources of funding. The entire rationale of this report is that healthy 33 lakes provide a wide variety of services and physical products and that decision makers need to do a better job of demonstrating these benefits to the broader community, and 34 35 eventually to start collecting some payments for these environmental services, payments 36 that can be used to help pay for required management actions. Lake Toba in Indonesia 37 presented one example whereby the lake management authority has been working with various stakeholders to increase its funding base (and its base of political support) for 38 improved lake management. In particular, a major industry, PT Toba Pulp, a pulp 39 40 producer, is working with the local community to behave in a more "environmentally 41 friendly" manner. In addition, the company will set aside 1% of its net revenue for the use of the local government for improved environmental management in the lake basin. 42 Once implemented, this "user fee" should generate over \$500,000 per year for the local 43 44 resource management authorities.

45

46 Practical Steps towards Securing Additional Funding

47

48 Decision makers seek practical ways to increase the financial resources available to them. Ideal sources of funding are those that are sustainable, easy (and cheap) to collect, and 49 help re-enforce lake management objectives. Since collecting revenue is itself not a 50 costless activity (and it seems counterproductive to spend more to collect the fee than 51 the fee itself generates) astute decision makers look for ways whereby the 52 users/beneficiaries can help share the responsibility for fee collection. This has the 53 greatest possibility when the fee is user-based and the service (fishing, recreation, 54 camping...) is provided by a private business. 55 56

1 Of course the ideal financing combination will be unique to each lake, but the following 2 situations are examples where opportunities exist to secure additional funding from local, 3 national or international sources:

4 5

6

7

8

9

10

11

14

15

16

- Lakes with international environmental benefits that make them eligible for GEF funding (c.f. many of the GEF-linked lakes): funding source-external funds
- Lakes with major industrial users who can help pay for water management or •
- pollution reduction costs (c.f. Dianchi or Toba): funding source-pollution charges Lakes with important downstream users who can help pay to ensure their secure •
- water supply and water quality (c.f. Biwa): funding source-user fees
- Lakes with well-off lake community user groups who are able and willing to help • pay for sustainable resource management (c.f. fishermen in Laguna de Bay; 12 13 flower growers in Naivasha): funding source-user fees
 - Lakes with important recreational uses that can be tapped via user fees (c.f. • Dianchi, Constance, Great Lakes): funding sources—user fees, property taxes
 - Lakes with international waters where one partner is more willing (and able) to • help pay for improved management (c.f. Peipsi): funding sources-GEF and other bilateral and international transfers
- International (external) willingness-to-pay for bequest and/or existence values: 19 • 20 funding sources—NGOs, bilateral and international transfer such as from the GEF 21
- 22 Starting the process of collecting fees where none were collected before is not easy. People would rather have a service provided for free than pay for it. Experience around 23 24 the world, however, strongly suggests that much more can be done to increase local (and 25 national) revenue collection, and that when the lake users see that they are also receiving improved services and management as a result, there is wide-spread 26 acceptance of these charges. Given that both national level and external funding is 27 28 available for many lakes, many decision makers have the luxury of starting small with initial revenue enhancement activities and thereby beginning to build public acceptance 29 (if not active support!) for increasing local revenues. Obviously this is a governance issue 30 31 that requires a partnership between the various lake stakeholders and active public participation. It is worth the effort, however, in order to build a sustainable financial 32 base, and establish a clear link between the users of the lake basin and its resources and 33 a responsibility to help pay for some of the management costs. 34 35
- 36

Section III. Synthesis

The report concludes with this section. Chapter 9 on integration of plans brings all the themes of Section II together and discusses how lake basin management is carried out in practice. Chapter 10 recaps the report and puts forth some guidelines for anyone interested in taking action to improve the conditions of a lake and the people and nature which both depend on it.

Chapter 9. Plans to Action: Integration of Planning Dimensions 1 2 3 This chapter introduces how we can go about integrating the basic components of lake 4 basin management and their associated concerns described in Part II into the process of 5 developing lake basin management plans. First, it discusses lake basin management plans in terms of their scope and the associated mode of implementation. Specifically, 6 7 they are categorized into visions, long-term comprehensive plans, short-term action plans and specific interventions plans. A simple conceptual framework is then introduced 8 9 to facilitate assessment of the current state of the lake basin and its management as compared to the management needs in future, drawing attention to two overarching 10 11 requirements, i.e.; 12 13 development of a social consensus • requirement for knowledge about lake basin biophysical and socio-economic 14 • 15 processes. 16 17 The importance of these two requirements permeates many of the Briefs. 18 19 Finally, we discuss how widely differing planning dimensions of lake basin management projects may be meaningfully integrated. Here, emphasis will be placed on the 20 21 importance of allowing the integration process to take place gradually while keeping in sight the long-range and broad issues typically found in the management of such 22 complex systems as lake basins. 23 24 25 Lake Basin Planning 26 A plan consists of a set of goals and objectives agreed by all stakeholders together with 27 the actions to be taken to reach those goals and objectives. Plans can be developed at a 28 29 number of levels of generality. Each of them contains the well-recognized stages of 30 planning: 31 32 establishment of an agreed goal, 33 • development of alternative strategies for reaching the goal, 34 selection of the preferred strategy based on assessment of feasibility 35 implementation of that strategy with mobilization of necessary resources, • refinement of the strategy through monitoring and evaluation. 36 • 37 Generically, these stages exist regardless of scale and scope of the plan. 38 39 The most broad-scoped and generalize form of lake basin plan is a "vision", a 40 declaration with some long-term aspirations to work toward but with little or no binding 41 mandates or resource commitment. The recently completed Vision and Strategy 42 43 Framework for Management of Lake Victoria Basin is an example. It lays the foundation 44 for the riparian countries to manage the lake jointly, with aspiration to achieve some high 45 level agreed goals. A vision framework such as World Lake Vision (http://www.ilec.or.jp/eg/wlv/WLV_Final.PDF and Box 9.1) can be both inspirational and 46 47 instrumental in promoting the development of more specific implementation-oriented forms of lake basin management plans as exemplified by Lake George Basin Management 48 49 Plan (Paper presented at the GEF LBMI African Workshop, Integrated Management of 50 Lake George, Uganda: The Lake George Basin Integrated Management Organisation,

51 LAGBIMO).

1

Box 9.1. World Lake Vision

The World Lake Vision is a call to action made by some 40 local, national as well as international organizations concerned with sustainable use of lakes and their values. It focuses on their uniqueness, their range of uses, and their fundamental importance to the human condition and the natural order now and in the future. The World Lake Vision provides guiding principles or menu of strategies and opportunities, as fundamental components of an integrative framework for identifying significant lake problems and developing practical solutions. The seven principles detailed in World Lake Vision document provide a blue print for achieving the transition to managing lakes for their sustainable use.

Principle 1: A harmonious relationship between humans and nature is essential for the sustainability of lakes.

Principle 2: A lake drainage basin is the logical starting point for planning and management actions for sustainable lake use.

Principle 3: A long-term, proactive approach directed to preventing the causes of lake degradation is essential.

Principle 4: Policy development and decision making for lake management should be based on sound science and the best available information.

Principle 5: The management of lakes for their sustainable use requires the resolution of conflicts among competing users of lake resources, taking into account the needs of present and future generations and of nature.

Principle 6: Citizens and other stakeholders must participate meaningfully in identifying and resolving critical lake problems.

Principle 7: Good governance, based on fairness, transparency and empowerment of all stakeholders, is essential for sustainable lake use.

2

3 For a basin management plan to be mandated for implementation, it has to prescribe 4 details of the structural and non-structural actions to be carried out, as a long-term 5 plan with envisioned implementation provisions, unlike a vision statement 6 discussed above. The long-term goals must be met by a range of relevant organizations. 7 Since the implementation of the plan may span longer than the time frame for usual 8 budgetary considerations, the agencies responsible for to carrying out the plan may or may not be endowed with the needed level of financial and manpower resources. For the 9 10 plan to be viable, it usually has to be scaled down to meet the budgetary constraints. The 11 plan thus gets revised over time. 12 13 For example, the comprehensive plans for Lake Biwa provide an interesting insight of long-term plans with strong orientation in implementation. The Lake Biwa Comprehensive 14 15 Plan (1972-1997), that included a large number of lake resource development and regional economic development projects, was originally designed to be completed in 10 16 17 years the long-term financial commitments coming from the national and downstream local governments through a special legal provision and institutional arrangements (the 18 19 plan, after two project period extensions with additional resource commitments 20 particularly for environmental components, were completed in 1997). On the contrary, 21 Lake Biwa Comprehensive Conservation Plan (1998 – 2050) of which the first the three-22 phase planning durations is currently being implemented, does not have a special 23 financial mechanism backed up by the legal provisions involving the national and the downstream local governments, and it is expected that many of the component projects 24 25 included are likely not to be implemented as envisioned. The Lake Biwa case attests to 26 the fact that implementation of a long-term plan will be significantly affected by the availability of financial resources over time, which will also depend on the long-term 27 28 sociopolitical interest and commitments. Although not specifically mentioned in the lake briefs, many of the lake-basin plans in North America and Europe that involved 29 infrastructure development such as construction of basin-wide wastewater treatment 30 31 systems had to have long-term plans with firm resource commitment over a set planning 32 period, with suitable institutional arrangements for project implementation.

While such long-term plans with firm resource commitment over time are rare to find in
the financially strained developing countries to which many of the 28 lake cases belonged,
there are cases of comprehensive plan for lake conservation with multiple intervention
projects both of long and short term implementation arrangements such as one for Bhoj
Wetland:

- 7 The Lake Conservation and Management Project also known as Bhoj Wetland • Project, envisages tackling of various issues associated with conservation and 8 management of the Upper and Lower Lakes of Bhopal, under a multi-pronged 9 strategy. Although these issues are deeply interrelated and inter-linked, for 10 operational and management convenience, they are addressed under different 11 independently executed sub-projects. The proposed action plan is not one time 12 13 quick solution but should trigger a chain reaction so as to make the management sustainable. The Project identified 16 sub-projects. 14 15
- 16 and one for Lake Dianchi:
- As required by "The Approval on the 'Ninth-Five-Year Plan and the Tenth-Five-Year Program for Dianchi Basin Water Pollution Prevention and Treatment' by the State Council", Environmental protection department at Provincial and Municipal levels jointly carried out an "Zero O'clock Action" to force 253 major polluters located in the catchment of Lake Dianchi to bring their pollution into control before May 1st, 1999.

which may be regarded as emulation to some extent of the experience in comprehensive
lake basin management over the past decades in Japan as well as in countries in North
America and Europe.

The lake briefs also provided many examples of what may be called the "**action plans**". These action plans are more directly focused on a particular set of intervention schemes that is likely to bring about tangible improvement on the ground over a period of several years, if not shorter, continued to be upgraded over a longer time period. One such example is Lake Ohrid "Transbouandary Watershed Action Plan". The plan included the following four primary action items:

34 35

36 37

38

39

40

- Reduction of point source pollution through actions that stress septic system management and maintenance, homeowner education, and management of solid waste;
- Reduction of non-point source pollution through actions that focus on implementing conservation practices on farms and restoring impaired stream reaches;
- Habitat protection and restoration through wetlands inventory and the
 establishment of a no-net-loss policy, identification and protection of fish
 spawning habitat, and inventories of the native flora and fauna in the watershed;
- Comprehensive planning through the establishment of micro-watershed planning committees, and by creating a GIS system and building the planning capabilities within the municipalities.
- While these actions are formulated with mobilization of funds from various external
 sources in mind, they are also to be coupled with the local actions, initiatives and
 commitments.
- 51

47

52 A more specific type of plan is a short-term management intervention plan

- 53 developed by a particular sector for either development or conservation/remediation
- 54 purposes. For example, New York, Vermont, and Québec signed a Water Quality 55 Agreement for Lake Champlain in 1993 that included a phosphorus load reduction
- 56 strategy from point and non-point sources. A recent (2000) review of progress showed

- 1 that the three States had considerably exceeded their reduction commitments. This
- 2 review also highlighted one of the limitations of such sectoral plans. In this case, the
- nutrient reductions were being offset by nutrient load increases in other sectors,
 principally conversion of agricultural land to urban uses.
- 5

These different levels of planning can be nested; i.e. vision exercise can be used to
establish the agreed goals prior to a more comprehensive planning exercise, and sectoral
management intervention plans can be scaled up to more comprehensive multi-sectoral
plans, with a combination of short-term action plans.

10

11 The advantages of taking a planned approach to management, compared to an ad hoc approach, are essentially ones of efficiency and governance. Once the values to be 12 13 extracted from the lake basin (the goals) and the management actions are agreed, then there is a much higher likelihood that resources will be used more efficiently to achieved 14 15 these goals if they are expended in a planned way. In addition, if the planning has been carried out transparently and with stakeholder involvement, then there is also a higher 16 likelihood that all parties will feel that their needs have been considered seriously and at 17 18 least some will have been incorporated into the agreed plan.

19

20 In principle, a planned approach to management is particularly important for lake basin 21 management because of the long time frames and complex dynamics involved in lake 22 basin management. However, there are a number of pragmatic reasons why a 23 comprehensive lake basin plan may be impractical, and why it is more realistic to 24 commence with a more limited approach such as a sectoral development or remediation 25 plan. A common reason is that there is no widespread agreement amongst all the 26 stakeholder groups about sharing the resources of the lake basin—a lack of social 27 agreement. A related reason is a lack of political commitment to implement any agreed 28 actions. This can arise when the lake basin may be shared amongst a number of 29 jurisdictions that have quite different commitments to its management, different levels of 30 resources and different external drivers. Thus, Lake Malawi is of central importance to 31 the economy of Malawi itself but of considerably less importance to the other two riparian 32 countries—Tanzania and Mozambique. Unlike Malawi, the populations of the latter two 33 countries are concentrated in areas away from the lake. Consequently, there is at this stage no shared imperative amongst the countries to manage the lake jointly. 34 35

36 Another common reason is that it is quite difficult to make an estimate of the potential 37 gain associated with different management interventions. Commonly there is either inadequate knowledge about the long-term consequences of alternative management 38 39 actions, or there is a disconnection between those who possess this knowledge (usually 40 scientific institutions) and high-level decision makers. That is, decision makers do not 41 understand the implications of the scientific findings or the scientists themselves are 42 unable to articulate their findings in a way that is meaningful to decision makers. Further, the time horizon of policy making is generally much shorter than the time it takes for the 43 44 lake to respond to interventions. This has been discussed in Chapter 7. Consequently, a 45 lake management plan usually consists of various individual sector and local 46 management interventions and initiatives rather than a self-contained comprehensive plan.

47 p 48

49 A Framework for Analyzing Lake Basin Planning

50

The level of social consensus and the extent of knowledge about a lake basin are two characteristics that, from the lake briefs, appear to determine the type and degree of integrated planning that can succeed in a lake basin. While these two characteristics form continua—the first runs from independent stakeholder group to societies where there is a high degree of social agreement; and the second runs from little understood lakes to ones where there is an extensive knowledge base about social needs, economic implications and biophysical processes—it is convenient for discussion to represent them
by a simple 2x2 matrix (Figure 9.1).

3

4 Social consensus is an important determinant of integrated planning because of the 5 diversity of stakeholder groups and the importance of externalities in lake basins. It is 6 difficult to maximize the aggregate benefits from a lake basin unless these stakeholder 7 groups appreciate the inter-dependency of their actions and the benefits that can be gained from cooperation. The long time frames and the complex dynamics of lakes make 8 a reliable knowledge base (both socio-economic and biophysical) about a lake basin 9 10 important at all stages of developing a lake basin plan. It informs the agreement on 11 possible goals, the selection of management actions, and the implementation of those 12 actions, especially monitoring progress in meeting the goals.

13

	Extent of Knowledge		
Social Consensus	Ouadrant 1 High Consensus Good Knowledge Base	Ouadrant 2 High Consensus Limited Knowledge Base	
	Quadrant 3 Low Consensus Good Knowledge Base	Quadrant 4 Low Consensus Limited Knowledge Base	

14 Figure 9.1. The influence of social consensus and state of knowledge on planning

15

The top-left quadrant (Quadrant 1) represents an ideal situation where there is social 16 17 agreement on the goals to be pursued and adequate knowledge on how to implement 18 management actions to reach those goals. Many small-scale sectoral resource development projects with quantifiable objectives (e.g., fishery development, tourism, 19 20 etc.) fall into this guadrant, as do some conservation/remediation projects. Because of 21 the limited sectoral focus, the social agreement about lake basin management and the 22 ability to use good quality knowledge to guide implementation, sectoral plans in this quadrant tend to be very successful. Thus a series of programs to reduce nutrient loads 23 from point sources in both USA and Canada received widespread public support and were 24 based on a strong scientific knowledge base. These programs have been successful to the 25 26 point where the majority of nutrients now enter the lake from diffuse sources, including internal sediment loads. 27

28

As the lake resources become scarce and the interactions between these sector-specific 29 30 or localized developments and other sectors become more apparent, there is likely to be 31 either less social agreement or less knowledge about the long-term effects of development and remediation interventions. Consequently there are fewer examples of 32 cross-sectoral and transboundary lake basin plans that fit into this quadrant. The best 33 34 examples come from the developed world where there are examples of cross-sectoral and transboundary institutions that have been established to implement the plans for 35 lakes that fall into this quadrant. Thus the International Joint Commission for the 36 37 Laurentian Great Lakes was established following the 1909 Boundary Waters Treaty between Canada and the United States to resolve disputes and to advise the 38 39 governments of on a wide range of issues affecting the Great Lakes. It has been effective 40 in promoting cooperative management of a range of pollution and ecological problems facing the Great Lakes. Elsewhere there are examples of cross-sectoral or transboundary 41 institutions, such as the International Fund for Saving the Aral Sea (IFAS) and the Lake 42 Chad Basin Commission, that have been established but which have not been fully 43 44 effective because the necessary social consensus (and to a lesser extent, the knowledge) 45 has not been present.

2 The top-right quadrant (Quadrant 2) represents the cases where there is good social 3 agreement on the development and management of a lake basin but where there is 4 limited knowledge on which this management can be based. Of course, management 5 plans can be developed for lakes in this quadrant but the limited knowledge base implies that the outcomes of these plans will be difficult to foresee. These lake basin plans would 6 7 typically include a knowledge development component such as an intensive monitoring 8 program or a scientific or socio-economic research component to reduce the 9 uncertainties. These plans would also be developed under the precautionary principle; 10 i.e. management actions would be conservative so that the chances of causing unforeseen problems would be minimized. Examples of lakes that fit into this quadrant 11 include Tonle Sap, Lake Dianchi, and Lake Issyk-Kul 12 13 14 Lake Nakuru in Kenya represents an example of a lake basin in the bottom left 15 guadrant (Quadrant 3). There are a number of stakeholders in the lake basin completing for the lake basin's resources (Box 9.2). However, there has also been considerable 16 amount of biophysical research undertaken by Kenyan government authorities with donor 17 18 assistance, a local University and NGOs into the water quantity and quality problems of

19 the lake and its catchment. The Lake Nakuru brief summarizes the situation as "It is now

- widely recognized that the constraints to lake basin management are mainly social,
- economic and institutional." Management plans for lakes in this quadrant tend to remain
 sectorally fragmented. Thus, the Kenvan Wildlife Service has developed an Ecosystem
- sectorally fragmented. Thus, the Kenyan Wildlife Service has developed an Ecosystem
 Integrated Management Plan for the Lake Nakuru National park surrounding the lake and
- the Nakuru Municipal Council completed a Strategic Structural Plan for the town.
- However, there is no overall plan for the basin that sets out agreed sharing of the
- 26 resources of the Basin.
- 27

1

Box 9.2. Competition for resources in the Lake Nakuru Basin

Lake Nakuru catchment (1800 km²) lies within the African Rift Valley. It is bounded to the west by the Mau Ranges, to the north by the Menengai Crater and the Bahati Highlands to the Northeast and the Eburru crater to the South. There are gently sloping open grasslands to the east. The lake receives water from these surrounding areas and has no surface outlet. The town of Nakuru abuts the northern end of the lake.

Prior to 1900 the Lake Nakuru basin was sparsely settled with abundant wildlife. During colonial times the area was occupied by large grazing and cropping properties. Since independence in 1963 there have been dramatic changes in the land uses in the catchment with consequent pressures on the water resources. Initially, the large farms were broken up into smaller settlement blocks for the indigenous population. These settlements continued to expand up into the surrounding ranges. Between 1967 and 1988 the area under forest and natural vegetation declined from 47% of the catchment to 26%. Even after the remaining forested areas were gazetted for protection in the late 1980s, the clearing continued. Between 1994 and today a further 30,000 ha of forest are estimated to have been cleared. Over 30,000 people are estimated to have settled in these areas.

Tourism is a significant industry in the area. The Lake Nakuru National Park was gazetted in 1968 and was expanded in 1974. This National Park is most famous for the massed gatherings of flamingoes. The Park receives the largest number of visitors of any National Park in Kenya.

The town of Nakuru has also grown dramatically from its inception in the early 1900s. It now contains over 400,000 people. Most of that growth has occurred in the last 20 years with the average growth rate being about 10% for the last decade. Apart from being a major administrative centre, the town is also an industrial centre with textiles, fungicide production (since closed), agro-chemical production, and production of household goods.

This rapid development has placed severe strains on the basin's limited water resources. Aquifers supplying Nakuru town are heavily utilized; rivers flowing into the lake have declined with upstream abstractions; water quality in the lake is believed to have declined as a result of polluted storm water from the town; and sediments loads to the lake have increased with the upstream land clearance.

Although there are sectoral plans of management, there is no overall plan of management that sets out how the further development of the catchment will be controlled and how the existing stresses will be managed so as to maximize the benefits to all those dependent on the catchment's water resources.

28

29 The bottom right quadrant (Quadrant 4) represents one of the most complicated and 30 difficult situations facing lake basin management. A typical example of when this occurs

31 is when a large-scale irrigation system is proposed upstream of the lake. The

1 consequences of this development on the inflow of water into the lake can sometimes be 2 difficult to predict if there are other influences on the lake's water level that are not well 3 understood. In the case of Lake Chad, the Lake Chad Basin Commission (established in 4 1964 by Chad, Nigeria, Cameroon and Niger) has been unable to effectively manage the 5 lake because some of the countries have pursued independent development of irrigation. In addition there is only a limited understanding of the combined effects of water 6 7 withdrawals, climate variability and climate change on the lake's water level so that there is no accepted knowledge base from which management decisions can be made. While 8 9 management actions will be undertaken in these lakes, it is difficult to develop any 10 coordinated plans in the face of limited knowledge and lack of social agreement. Typically, these actions will be confined to individual sectors, such as fisheries or tourism, 11 and should ideally be based on a careful risk assessment of a particular management 12 13 intervention. However, this seldom happens.

14

15 It is important to note, however, that the forces (population growth, sectoral

development, climate variability, external economic forces) that are driving development 16

in the lake basin will change over time. If there is a sufficiently developed knowledge 17

18 base (quadrants 1 & 3) then the likely changes in these driving forces can be

19 investigated and absorbed into the planning process. Box 9.3 describes the "scenario

planning" process used in the Lake Peipsi/Chudskoe lake basin management program to 20

anticipate and examine the direction of future changes in the basin. 21

22

Box 9.3. Anticipating Changes in Driving Forces in Lake Peipsi/Chudskoe

Lake Peipsi/Chudskoe is managed by two countries, Estonia and Russia, that are each undergoing profounc economic, social and political change. Newly independent Estonia will soon join the EU, while Russia struggles to find new political direction and regain economic growth after the collapse of the Soviet Union. Nevertheless, the two countries established a Transboundary Water Commission in 1997.

Eutrophication is agreed to be the key problem facing the lake. The principle sources of the nutrients causing eutrophication have been identified. Although there was a solid basis of scientific knowledge for the lake or which management could be based, a conventional approach to planning did not seem appropriate because of the high uncertainty about the economic, social and political development of the region. Planners could not assume that the current drivers of change would remain relevant in the longer term.

Consequently, planners drew up development scenarios for the region for the next 15-20 years. The scenarios were developed using a story-line methodology using both qualitative and quantitative information about the lake and the basin. The driving forces included population growth, wastewater treatment improvements, fertilizer use, livestock numbers, crop yields, atmospheric deposition of nutrients and the extent of agricultural land use. The five scenarios incorporating these drivers were:

I—Business-as-usual (BAU)—a continuation of present trends; II—Target/fast development—Estonia makes a fast transition to the EU and Russia experiences rapid economic growth and social development;

III—Crisis—economic and social conditions in both countries deteriorate radically;

IV—Isolation—Estonia undergoes a slow and unwilling adaptation to the EU and Russia increasingly becomes isolated from Europe and more nationalistic;

V-A combination of scenarios II and III (Estonia develops rapidly but Russia remains in crisis)

The planners confirmed that, under all these scenarios, eutrophication represented the major threat to the lake's water quality, and that changes in the amount of land under cultivation was the major factor controlling nutrient loads to the lake. No scenario predicted a larger nutrient load than had occurred during the communist period. The Target/fast development scenario (II) resulted in a substantially larger total Nitrogen input to the lake, while the Crisis scenario (III) resulted in the largest total Phosphorus load.

23

The above framework helps categorize and understand the wide range of lake basin 24

25 management plans reviewed in this project. The framework also helps develop insights

26 into how lake basin planning may be advanced through building of greater social

27 consensus and developing a stronger knowledge base. Development of a management

plan is only the initial step in systematically managing a lake basin. The plan has to be 28

29 implemented through space and time with the involvement of a wide range of

30 stakeholders.

1 Administrative institutions, such as local governments, typically do not have boundaries 2 that follow lake basin boundaries, and management institutions are usually organized on 3 sectoral lines with very specific objectives and mandates to promote the development of 4 those sectors. These separate institutions compete for resources to achieve their 5 objectives, contrary to the reality of lake basins where the resources are interlinked 6 because of the complex dynamics and transmissivity of lakes. Because of these two 7 reasons—the mismatch in management boundaries, and the divisive nature of sectorally 8 based management—the management of many lakes around the world is inefficient and 9 unable to provide the resource values that people require. Clearly an integrated approach 10 is required if these management shortcomings are to be overcome. In fact, the 11 integrated planning of lake basins is just a particular example of integrated water resources management (IWRM). However, achieving a more integrated approach to lake 12 13 basin management is a great challenge.

14

15 Integration of Management Interventions over Time and Space

16

17 The common ways in which lake basin management is integrated across space and

18 across sectors and institutions is discussed here with a particular focus on the time

dimension. This is extremely important in public sector planning in general, but

particularly so in lake basin management because of the special characteristics of lakes
 discussed in Chapter 1.

21 22

23 Given the way in which lake management problems cannot easily be quarantined

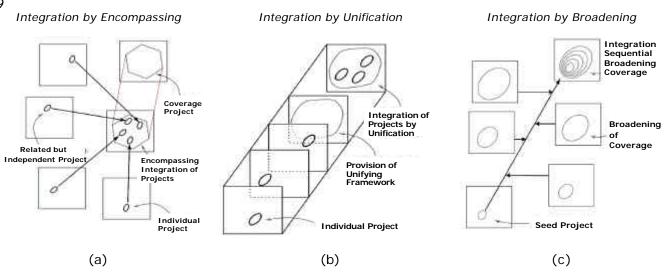
24 because of the transmissivity of lakes, it is desirable that the management of a lake basin

should be as integrated as is feasible across sectors, locations and social groups.

26 Integration can be developed through different institutional structures (Chapter 3). Here

we describe three ways (Figure 9.2) in which the lake Briefs how that managementactivities can be integrated over time.

28 29



Figures 9.2 a-c. Three Forms of Integration.

30

31 Integration by Encompassing

32

This type of integration (Figure 9.2a) occurs when an "encompassing" project or program is instituted to facilitate coordination of independently developed sectoral programs and projects that are operating at the same time. This kind of integration is usually introduced when it becomes apparent that greater benefits can be gained from

37 coordinating existing activities so that the objectives of more than one beneficiary group

38 can be achieved. Typically, this integration will include cross-sectoral coordination across

39 different government Ministries, and even different countries for transboundary lakes,

when the beneficiaries belong to more than one sector. For example, the Lake Biwa
Department of Lake Biwa and the Environment in Shiga Prefecture, Japan was
established for the purpose of bringing together and integrating existing projects in the
areas of forestry conservation, sewerage construction, environment, and watershed
management to implement the "Lake Biwa Comprehensive Conservation Plan".

7 Integration by Unification

8 9 Lake management interventions typically take place sequentially and intermittently as 10 problems become apparent and responses become feasible as agreements are reached, 11 funds become available and information on possible actions is acquired. Of course, if these interventions were the result of a plan, then there may be no need for "integration" 12 13 because the integrative design should be imbedded in the plan. In reality though, these 14 interventions are usually introduced because of changing social needs, deteriorating 15 water quality, shifting ecosystem responses, etc. Consequently, a unifying program is introduced to ensure that these projects all contribute to longer-term goals. The Zoning 16 and Management Plan for Aguaculture (ZOMAP) in Laguna de Bay provides a typical 17 18 example. The competition for Laguna de Bay's aquatic resources has been fierce for 19 decades, particularly during the 1970's and 1980's. It was due particularly to the 20 introduction of fishpen culture technology during the mid 1970's that immediately 21 became a lucrative operation for the large-scale commercial operations. In 1980s, 22 Laguna Lake Development Authority (LLDA) attempted to introduce various measures 23 both to conserve the fishery resource as well as to support small-scale local fishermen, 24 and specifically in 1983, a zoning plan of the entire lake surfacewas introduced for the 25 first time. It was an early version of more refined ZOMAP to be introduced later, designed 26 to rationalize the management and regulate the utilization of the fishery resources. The 27 comprehensive Master Plan of zoning was approved in 1996. The Plan was later in 1999 28 placed under LLDA's Lake Management Division. ZOMAP acted as a kind of unifying 29 project, providing a basis for the new phase of sustainable fishery resource management for the lake, with clearer delineation of responsibilities and political commitments. 30

31

6

32 Integration by Broadening

33 The previous types of integration dealt with the pursuit of a specific objective over time. 34 35 But the breadth of projects being integrated can also expand over time so that a broader 36 and broader range of topics, areas and social groups are encompassed. If this is 37 undertaken in a predetermined and planned way, then this is equivalent to moving from a series of sectoral or local plans to a more comprehensively planned management of a 38 39 lake basin. For example, fringing wetlands around Lake Constance have been restored for 40 biodiversity conservation over the past decades, with the extent of restored shoreline gradually expanding to provide for natural habitats. This is an example where the 41 42 broadening has occurred over space. On the other hand, it was the extent of legislative involvement in eutrophication management was broadened considerably with the "soap 43 movement" in Lake Biwa in the late 1970's. Initially this was a local movement that led to 44 a "eutrophication control ordinance" that eventually culminated in the enactment of 45 national legislation, "the Lake Law", that allows for a range of conservation interventions 46 by the national government in lakes throughout Japan. This broadening took place over 47 48 some decades.

- 49
- 50

1 Integration Lessons

- Three lessons can be drawn from the lake briefs about successful integration;
- 5 (1) integration should first take place where the pressures are greatest
- 6 (2) integration should be phased over time
- 7 (3) integration should be pursued by necessity rather than by design

Integration should first take place where the pressures are greatest

9 10

8

2 3

4

11 For integrated lake basin management to be successful there needs to be good governance coupled with the necessary enabling conditions. These include a political 12 13 commitment to managing the lake basin in the long term for the benefit of all 14 stakeholders, effective institutions, a sense of consensus amongst the stakeholders, and 15 a good level of biophysical and socio-economic knowledge about the lake basin. Experience shows that moving too guickly to integrated lake basin management before 16 these conditions are established does not work (Lake Chad provides an example where 17 18 the initial enthusiasm for a transboundary commission was not matched by long-term 19 political and financial support). It is better to start small, by bringing together the 20 management agencies and stakeholders where the issues are apparent and there is a developing social consensus that they need to be managed properly. This is often within 21 22 a sector, such as fisheries, or with a problem such as pathogens from sewage where the 23 pressures on the resources quickly becomes apparent. Success in correcting this problem 24 builds confidence for tackling other problems. Examples of this incremental approach to 25 integration are given in Box 9.4 for Lake Ohrid and Chilika Lake. 26

Box 9.4. Building on Initial Success

Lake Ohrid, Macedonia and Albania

Lake Ohrid, shared by Macedonia and Albania, is an important cultural, economic and environmental resource. It faces problems from water pollution from old mines, town sewage and stormwater, agriculture and groundwater inflows from a nearby polluted lake. Lakeshore wetlands and riparian areas are threatened and exotic fish species have been introduced to the lake. An important commercial and cultural fish species, the Lake Ohrid trout, is threatened by overfishing as well as by the pollution, loss of breeding grounds and the introduced species. Both countries have agreed that the fisheries are in immediate danger and rapid management action is required. Scientific studies show that the fish in the lake are one single, linked population, and so they must be managed collectively, with similar requirements in both Macedonia and Albania. With assistance from bi-lateral and multi-lateral donors, Government officials and fisheries experts in both countries have agreed to a unification of some of the fisheries regulation. For example, in 2001, both countries agree to the same allowable net size. While there are still significant differences in the organization of the fishing industries in the two countries, these early successes with fisheries management (coupled with the establishment of a non-executive Management Board for the lake, and agreements on treating the sewage from urban areas around the lake) provide a foundation for increasing cooperation in managing the lake.

Chilika Lake, India

Chilika Lake, on the east coast of India, is an estuarine lake system noted for its scenic beauty, its productive fisheries, its religious significance, and its importance as a resting place for migratory birds. However, due to diversion of inflowing rivers for irrigation, and increased silt loads from inflowing rivers, the lake exit has become silted up and fish catches have declined dramatically. Consequently, the overall average salinity was reduced by 33-34% by late 1995-1996. With the shift towards a more freshwater system fish landings declinec from an average annual yield of 6000-8000 mt during 1970-1990 to 1270-1630 mt in 1990-1997. Over 200,000 people are dependent on this industry. To compound the threat to their livelihoods, the Revenue department introduced new licensing arrangements in early 1990's that effectively handed over their traditional fishing rights to investors in prawn farming. Apart from sedimentation and water withdrawals, there are also threats from wastewater, agricultural chemicals, weeds, and deforestation in surrounding catchments. A Management Authority was established for the lake in 1992 to coordinate and promote lake restoration and development across the operational agencies. A new entrance was dredged to the ocean in 2000 to provide more direct interchange between the lake and the ocean. The results were dramatic – salinity levels in the northern sector of the lake changed from 0.5 – 2.5 ppt to 0.1-36.00 ppt, and fish landings increased from 1600 mt before intervention to 11,877 mt in 2001-2002. there were other benefits in crab catches and in reductions in aquatic weeds. The obvious success of this engineering intervention in the lake has provided strengthened the hand of the Chilka Development Authority in implementing other aspects of lake management, including non-structural measures.

2 Integration should be phased over time

3 4 This lesson is a corollary of the previous one. It typically takes many years, even 5 decades, for goals to be agreed by the stakeholders in single sector issues, let alone 6 multi-sectoral problems; for sufficient knowledge to be accumulated for effective 7 management; for institutions to be established or coordinated; for laws to be passed and rules developed; etc. Thus, the approach of starting small and building on successes 8 9 towards a more comprehensive lake management plan will take many years. All 10 stakeholders need to be committed for the long-term for these plans to be successful. 11 The Lake Naivasha Riparian Association has evolved over several decades from the 12 earlier Lake Naivasha Riparian Owners Association (1929) to take on an increasingly 13 wider responsibility. Originally formed just to manage the use of the exposed lake bed by riparian owners, it now has a much wider role in environmental management of the lake 14 15 and contributes to the lake's Management Implementation Committee which is in the process of being gazetted under the Environmental Coordination and Management Act 16 17 (Box 3.1).

18

1

Externally funded assistance projects typically last for 3-4 years. While, at first sight, this is inconsistent with the need for long-term management, many of these projects include components to help develop the good governance and enabling conditions that are needed for long-term lake management. However, even this focus on establishing the conditions for long-term management needs to be maintained. As some lake briefs make clear (e.g. Lake Malawi) there are often no mechanisms established for sustaining this external assistance beyond the duration of the project.

26

27 Integration should be pursued by necessity rather than integration by design 28

Regardless of any of the above modes of integration, we should keep in mind that there will not be any perfectly integrated management plan. Naturally, a management plan that is subjected to only minimal integration may bring about a more desirable outcome than a plan that is subjected to highly complex and difficult integration. In the case of management of a system that is as complex as a the lake basin system, in general, integration by necessity is likely to bear better fruit than integration by design.

35 36

36 Adaptive Management Planning

37

38 The management plan describes what actions should be taken and activities 39 implemented. A comprehensive management plan would include necessary policy 40 changes, new or revised standards and guidelines, new or revised regulations, new 41 legislation, proposals for the introduction of new technology and practices, and plans for 42 remodeling existing infrastructure and introducing new infrastructure. There are a wealth of such actions and activities that could be included in the plan, but in most cases, skilled 43 44 human resources, time and money are limited. Hence, the question is what should be the 45 priorities and in what sequence should actions be taken and activities implemented. 46 47 Priorities are important, but there is another equally important problem associated with 48 developing and implementing lake basin management programs. The kind of management plan that lake basin management programs need to focus on in the future 49

50 is quite unlike traditional, static master plans that are largely based on forecasts and

51 predictions. A blue print for achieving targets and outcomes on this basis is unlikely to be 52 effective in the complex and highly dynamic context of lake basin problems today—there

are too many uncertainties, unknowns and untested assumptions. For example,

54 uncertainties about ecological processes and functions, the impact of different patterns of

resource use, and uncertainty about political and social development and change in the

- 56 future and hence what values and conflicts might constitute driving forces. The risk of
- 57 wasting limited resources on actions and activities that do not bring major benefits in

1 terms of the agreed targets is large in the face of these kinds of uncertainty. Hence, lake

2 basin management planning in the future should have the character of adaptive 3 management planning.

4

5 Adaptive management planning is a process for developing a management plans based 6 on an explicit set of assumptions and hypothesis about the elements and components of 7 the lake basin natural and man-made system and how they function and interact. In adaptive management, the monitoring program is designed to provide a feedback loop 8 9 that enables the planning team to assess these assumptions, improve its model of the 10 lake basin system, assess progress towards the targets, and *adapt* and adjust the plan to 11 reflect what has been learned from the expanding knowledge base. In this approach 12 scientific research, data gathering and monitoring is directly linked to management, and 13 in turn, how resources are allocated to research and knowledge development is driven by 14 management priorities. Adaptive management planning is therefore knowledge and data 15 driven, and analytical because of its reliance on models. But it is also stakeholder based. It relies heavily on the participation of stakeholders to establish goals and targets, to 16 manage competing objectives, and to weigh options and tradeoffs. 17 18

19 Planning for Sustainable Lake Basin Management Institutions

20

21 A lake basin management program is not a project, it is a long term process. The 22 planning for lake basin management also have to reflect that long term process. It will 23 also have to function in both the biophysical, administrative and political world. 24 Significant amounts of information are needed for the management plan to function 25 effectively, deriving from a knowledge base built over the long term. The changes it is designed to promote occur over long periods during which any number of key factors 26 27 influencing the outcome and choice of activity can change dramatically. Hence, how such 28 a long-term program is organized, staffed, resourced, and positioned within the 29 administrative and political system is critical to achieving the desired outcomes of the 30 plan at hand.

31

32 However, an important principle noted in Chapter 3 is that the chosen institutional 33 arrangement, and the roles and responsibilities assigned to that institution, for the plan

to bring forth the desired outcome, should be limited to those that cannot be effectively 34 35 and efficiently done by others. There are several examples among the Briefs of

36 experience in which effective progress has been achieved through local groups,

37 partnerships and organizations—essentially local arrangements developed by

38 stakeholders (including local and central government partners in some cases). This

reinforces this principle, suggesting again the necessity of adapting the mandate, role, 39

40 functions, and powers of a lake basin management organization to fit the particular

- 41 circumstance and needs of the lake basin, and in doing so, to take advantage of,
- 42 strengthen and enhance existing arrangements that have been effective.
- 43

44 There are instance in which governments have established a statutory body with broad 45 functions and powers for lake basin management. However, more generally there are 46 really few examples of effective basin management authorities. Laguna de Bay is an 47 interesting case because this statutory Authority has only gradually exercised their full 48 mandate and powers, allowing time for sufficient growth in capacity, and for learning, evolution of governance arrangements, and the emergence of key networks and 49 constituencies. A lake basin management plan, thus should take into account such 50 51 evolution in governance, organizational form, mandates and powers that appears to be the norm. Often, time can also be purchased with some early successes in the 52 implementation of a management plan by tackling visible and do-able activities first. 53 54 Regardless whether the lake basin management organization is primarily a coordinating 55

agency, a planning agency with little implementation authority, a regulator, or fully 56 empowered statutory authority or commission, the importance of staff numbers, a lake 57

1 basin management plan needs skills mix and continuity over the long term. Short-

2 termism, or ad-hocism—expecting the problems to be solved in a relatively short project

3 period, often with borrowed or seconded staff, is a major risk to the success of lake basin

4 management programs. Projects formulated to promote or support a lake basin

management program should, as first priority, invest in people and capacity, and only
through that emerging capacity, undertake to implement the functions of the lake basin

7 management organization.

8

9 Further, from a broader perspective, the initial steps and activities for development as

10 well as implementation of a lake basin management plan should focus on establishing

11 three things: effective collaboration with cooperating and partner organizations (even

then they initially don't see themselves as partners, or for that matter, even concerned);
effective coordination of the activities of agencies active in the lake basin; and a broad

14 consensus on goals and objectives and hence on the option space.

15

16 Many traditional government agencies are not receptive to collaboration, which they see as needless interference in their affairs. Others are reluctant to collaborate because they 17 18 see the potential to lose prerogatives or future opportunities to expand their activities. In 19 the beginning, therefore, establishing effective collaboration, and hence partnerships, will 20 be based on the persistence, state of mind and attitude of the agency in charge of lake 21 basin management. Much the same can be said about the problem of coordination. 22 Experience suggests coordination is relatively easy when agencies agree on the goals and 23 the broad outlines of what is to be done, i.e., the lake basin management plan. Otherwise 24 it runs aground on the same issues as collaboration. Achieving effective coordination of 25 activities, policies, regulations, etc., often involves establishing formal mechanisms, but 26 at no higher levels or with more overarching authority than is really necessary for 27 effective and efficient action. Consensus building is achieved through a number of 28 different mechanisms generally working at the same time, but the keys are awareness 29 raising, inclusion and informed participation.

30

31 Planning for Lake Basin Governance

32

33 While the above frameworks of analysis are useful for development and implementation of a management plan within the confine of a particular lake basin system, in reality 34 35 often, the focus of the management plan may have to be shifted to a broader scope of 36 sustainable regional and national development. The policy and institutional context that 37 must be navigated to meet such needs, then, may become daunting. The existing 38 institutional arrangements (laws, policies, development and resource user organizations, and government bodies) in most lake basins, that were established to promote 39 40 development and use of its natural resources or are intended to regulate these activities, 41 are in most lake basins in the developing world an integral if not major part of the 42 problem. Thus a key lesson is here is that the future of lake basin management in many cases will depend on how well the core partnership can be developed and enhanced 43 44 about the plan for which governmental organizations at all levels, the private sector, 45 NGOs, and other civil society, as well as resource user and stakeholder groups need to 46 work together. 47

- 48 As discussed in Chapter 2, the progress of degradation and loss of resource values in a 49 lake basin and the emergence of scarcity as a controlling factor, is often slow and relatively unnoticed. Hence, a decision maker is often the last to arrive on the scene, 50 51 especially in developing countries. Development of the resource values in the lake basin may have been taking place for a considerable time. As a consequence, much of the 52 governance framework (rights, policies, institutions) associated with the use and 53 development of resources (land, water, forests, grazing land, river channels, etc.) may be 54 well-established and strongly biased towards continued expansion and development. 55 56 Limits on resources, the costs of externalities such as pollution or erosion, the gradual
- 57 decline in resource values, or the spread of unsustainable practices caused by increased

vulnerability of livelihoods or poverty may not be recognized. Indeed development and
regulatory functions may be so fragmented that each narrow sector perspective is likely
to believe that these are the problems of others.

4

5 Much of what is meant for lake basin management will aim to bring about beneficial

6 changes in behavior and policy, the adoption of new technologies and practices,

7 improvement and enforcement of environmental regulations and standards, as well as

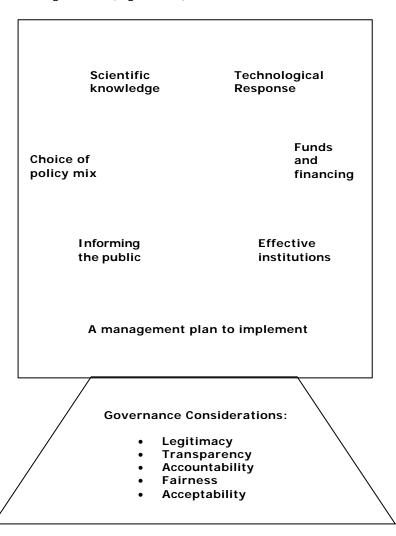
8 changes in infrastructure investment. Bringing about these changes depends importantly

9 on the quality of governance, i.e., the accountability of this myriad of organizations,
 10 public access to data and information, the transparency with which decisions are taken.

public access to data and information, the transparency with which decisions are taken,
 the extent to which rights, especially customary rights, are established and respected,

12 and the adherence to policy provided in existing legislation and the regulations and rules

- 13 that emerge from this legislation (Figure 9.3).
- 14



- 15 Figure 9.3. A Conceptual Framework of Lake Basin Management with Governance
- 16 Considerations.
- 17

18 Where governance is especially weak, the lake basin management becomes a daunting

19 task, especially so since it may certainly not be within the realm of lake basin

20 management to pursue such broad and sweeping changes. However, in most developing

21 countries, many of these aspects of governance are already undergoing change, and the

22 decision maker can be a powerful voice in promoting and facilitating the acceleration and

23 broadening of these changes. In doing so lake basin management today has access to

several powerful tools whose use is central to management programs—stakeholder

25 participation and partnerships, and an accessible knowledge base.

2 Like any plan for natural resource management, the political support, commitment and 3 will to the success are indispensable for lake basin management. The fostering of political 4 support must also be reinforced with public support, awareness and understanding. For 5 that, the impacts of degradation and the benefits of restoration need to be communicated to the policy makers in terms that they can understand and relate to. In addition, for lake 6 7 basin management plans to succeed, the role of the "champions" should not be 8 overlooked. Often, they are the one who can provide or mobilize sufficient political will 9 and support. On the other hand, in many developing countries, political factors are 10 frequently subject to radical change. The instabilities can have major adverse effect on 11 sustained lake basin management. Hence, it is important for a lake basin management 12 plan to allow for flexibility as well as risk mitigation and adaptation. 13

14

1 **Chapter 10: Towards the Future**

This report has discussed the major issues facing lake basin management and the range of options that might be considered to address these issues. It has also discussed the unique biophysical characteristics (long retention times, complex biophysical dynamics, and transmissivity) that make sustainable use and management of lake basin resource values a more complex environmental and natural resource management challenge.

8 9 Notwithstanding the unique resource values and character of lakes as a major feature in a river basin, the Report has not focused solely on the problems of lake water bodies. 10 Instead, the Report tries to show how the lake water body and its associated resource 11 conservation problems should be seen and addressed in a larger biophysical, ecological 12 13 and political context in order to select effective, sustainable and integrated strategies and 14 options that can address the causes of those problems. The Report has therefore focused 15 on the major challenges—institutional arrangements, policy, knowledge and information, 16 participation, and financing—and the broad range of governance considerations 17 characterized with principles and options that emerge from our recent lake basin

- 18 management experience.
- 19

20 The 28 Lake Briefs provide ample experience from which to draw lessons. But, it is also 21 important to recognize that in the broader management context of a lake basin, there is much to learn from management efforts of other natural resources. For example, lake 22 23 basin management has much in common with sustainable management of particular 24 natural resources (land, forests, fisheries, rangelands, wetlands and other environmental 25 values and services), or the sustainable use of multiple resource values within small and even micro-catchments as well as whole river basins. Those who are involved in lake 26 basin management can join networks of these other natural resource managers by many 27 means, but specially through the use of Internet facility. 28

29

Nonetheless, the future of lake basin management, both for individual lakes as well as for
lakes across the world, won't become sufficiently promising unless the state of existing
lake basin management programs is clearly understood.

33

34 Reassessing Existing Lake Basin Management Programs

35

As noted throughout the Report, the lessons and experience learned from the 28 lakes 36 37 brought forth a comprehensive picture of the global state of lake basin management today. The picture depicted is that among the selected programs, few seem to have 38 39 succeeded in reversing the trend of lake environment deterioration and the associated 40 degradation in resource values. Many lake basin management programs, however, have 41 advanced far enough to pause and reflect, even though they may be overwhelmed by 42 more roadblocks than they feel they can deal with. For them, the past, ongoing and 43 emerging collective experience in lake basin management does give a great deal of 44 insight in the future course of action that might be usefully undertaken. The lessons 45 obtained suggest that we will have to make sure we understand the problems and issues facing individual programs. Where is the state of the lake today, both biophysically and 46 47 managerially? What impact has the existing management program in terms of sustainable management of the lake, i.e., development and conservation/remediation of 48 49 its resource values? Are we moving in the right direction and are we sure we know what 50 that direction ought to be? What do we know now that we didn't know at the beginning? 51 Specifically; 52 What is the status of the knowledge base? Is a monitoring system in place •

- What is the status of the knowledge base? Is a monitoring system in place
 that would enable you to measure changes in key indicators? Is the data base
 sufficient? What are the remaining key gaps? Are information management
 tools in good enough shape to be deployed effectively?
- Is the capacity building and training program effective? Still targeted on
 priority skills? Is it inclusive and open to cooperating agencies, community

1	mound at 2 W/hat mid course corrections are needed as a loss there new
1	groups, etc.? What mid-course corrections are needed, e.g., are there new
2	skills not considered when you started?
3	 Has political will and commitment grown, or has it waned? Is sustaining and
4	building this a part of your program and how well is it working? What can you
5	do more of, what should you do less of, and what can you do better?
6	• Are effective mechanisms in place for effective stakeholder participation? All
7	stakeholders? What has been the change in awareness and understanding of
8	the problems and their linkage to stakeholder activities? What is the
9	perception of stakeholders of the program?
10	 Are the priority elements of management plan properly implemented? Do we
11	have an adequate management plan, or should it be brought up to date? Are
12	
	priorities and phasing clear? Are resources sufficient? Have we built the
13	coalitions that would enable the required actions to be implemented? Is
14	coordination adequate? Have either technology options or costs changed, and
15	are these changes reflected in the management plan?
16	
17	It is comparatively easy to look outward from a program, but much more problematic to
18	look inward with a "collective critical eye". A program might ask itself if we have a
19	sufficient number of the right kind of skills—answers to this question depend not only on
20	current bottlenecks and constraints that can be reasonably attributed to staff skills, but
21	also on reassessing the organizations mandate and objectives, authority (powers and
22	functions), and its work program. Specific questions to ask may include:
23	• Can we keep the staff we have or an expanded staff? Some programs are put
24	together initially in an ad hoc manner with staff seconded from different
25	sources for relatively short periods, an approach that can work relatively well
26	in the short run. Has the program reached the point where a more permanent
20	arrangement is going to be needed to sustain the program over the long-term,
28	and what needs to be done to ensure this?
29	• Do we have an adequate statutory basis to enable us to do what we know
30	must be done in the future? When should these changes be in place?
31	 What is there about the institutional capacity, beyond staffing, that limits
32	achieving effective implementation and constrains choosing the right option
33	among a range of possible actions? What can be done to remove these
34	constraints?
35	 Is there a champion(s) to sustain support and activate political will? Is the
36	champion listened to by politicians and senior officials? How can the situation
37	be dealt with without the champion?
38	
39	Dealing With Roadblocks
40	
41	There seems to be no end to the range of issues and problems that lake basin
42	management programs face in moving towards their objectives of restoration and
43	sustainable use of lake basin resources. However, the 28 lake briefs gave us clear
44	message that most issues can be overcome by building the knowledge base, effective
45	stakeholder participation, partnerships or collaboration among the concerned agencies.
46	But there are some really difficult issues that seem almost insurmountable. Among these
47	are:
48	 Policy conflicts, especially those that arise from long entrenched sector
40	interests, priorities or prerogatives, and that in many cases are inherent in
49 50	existing laws and regulations;
50 51	
51 52	 Political motives and agendas that run counter to the best interests of sustainable use of a lake basin's resources;
	sustainable use of a lake basin's resources;
53 54	 Lack of a voice—an unresponsive political system or administration; Corruption that appropriate the particular behaviors and actions the program.
54 55	 Corruption that encourages the particular behaviors and actions the program is trying to abange;
55	is trying to change;
56	• Jurisdiction boundaries that are creating barriers to effective and coordinated
57	action;

Lack of money to do something. •

1

15

24

39

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

2 3 These appear to be insurmountable questions to those in charge of management of individual lake basins. However, it is clear also that, as this experience and lesson 4 5 database expands with the participation of other lake basin management organizations, it 6 can be expected that we find and learn of new and even more innovative ways of dealing 7 with these difficult issues. The emerging messages coming from the 28 lake briefs 8 suggest, however;

- Be creative and proactive, with advocacy backed by analysis of good data; 9 Help to build coalitions and constituencies for change by intensifying efforts to 10 create awareness and understanding of the situation and the risks-try to put 11 our case in the terms and forms most relevant to those who can support the 12 13 changes; 14
 - Leverage external support and access that will enable the program to have greater voice;
- Pursue sector policy reform (water, agriculture, forestry, energy, etc.) and 16 seek out the champions of reform in different key sectors, join the reform 17 18 process, and support it whenever possible. Marshal evidence that care of the 19 lake basin will benefit various sectors dependent on the resources of the lake 20 basin. Critical values can be added to that reform process by showing how 21 additional benefits can be gotten from such reforms (and serious costs and 22 risks of loss avoided), by showing how the special vulnerability and associated risks of lakes and reservoirs can be reduced through the reforms. 23
- 25 One of the most difficult questions is resolution of conflict over resources or access to 26 resources. These conflicts are causing political bottlenecks to change or creating 27 controversy that is hardening opposing positions and views. Seek if "win-win" solutions 28 can be created by giving opposing sides reason to come to agreement. The lake briefs 29 collectively imply the following;
- 30 Most conflicts over resources or access to resources (even the requirement to 31 reduce pollution discharges) are seen by at least one party to the conflict as a 32 "win-lose" situation-someone else gains but I have to give up resources or 33 incur greater cost, or both-there are many ways around and through this 34 mentality, but the most promising are approaches that work to increase the 35 amount of resource available, or enlarge the idea of what is being shared, i.e., 36 total benefits rather than water, so that each side feels they gain significantly 37 from the agreement;
- Are there technologies or infrastructure which can change the ways in which 38 resources and especially benefits can be equitably shared (storage, water 40 saving technology, or waste reducing technology are good examples)? Is it possible, for example by improving efficiency to increase the level of resource 41 42 availability? Who could pay for these changes? Much creative thinking is useful in this regard and there is experience globally on how one side of the 43 44 dispute could pay for a technological change by the other side in return for a 45 substantial share in the benefits without the other side losing benefits and 46 perhaps even gaining as well. 47
 - Are there policy and legal changes, such as the allocation of secure and tradable rights, or resource pricing, or access charges, that could alter demand and lead to resolution of the conflict;
 - Water scarcity conflicts are often exacerbated by the traditional supply side mentality of sector organizations, hence, promoting a shift to demand management on their part may also help to alleviate conflict;
 - Creating and sharing revenue streams through the imposition of user or access charges, or pollution charges for example, open new ways for stakeholders to share in the benefits of resource use that opens the door to compromise.
- 56 57

1 From Lake Basin Management Initiative to Global Lake Basin Governance

Toward Global Stakeholder Participation and Partnerships

4 5 Every global natural resource management experience today points out the importance 6 and the central role of effective stakeholder participation at every step in its process. The 7 central lesson from this Lake Basin Management Initiative (LBMI) project also points to that direction. Essential awareness and understanding to overcome the barriers and 8 9 opposition can be created only through broad participation of stakeholders. Improved 10 governance, especially in terms of accountability, won't be achievable unless a large and 11 committed constituency with a strong voice for change exists. When stakeholders are 12 able to both understand and have an influence on the choice of goals and options, even 13 those who may initially see themselves as losers can often become proactive supporters. 14 In some contexts, the participatory approach may run counter to existing political, cultural and social norms. In these instances, the lake briefs suggests (Tonle Sap, for 15 instance) that a gradual, very site specific approach that yields quick local benefits can 16 be successful in gradually overcoming these barriers. 17

18

2 3

Similarly, the lake briefs illustrated that the typical institutional setting for lake basin
management involves a large number of organizations both governmental and nongovernmental. Implementation of a management plan thus requires effective
partnerships with key organizations. The same is true globally. Most lake basin projects

carried out in developing countries are supported in various capacities by more than one agency of technical collaboration and/or financial support, some with catalytic funding coming from GEF. It is evident that the role played by GEF has been extremely important and instrumental. It is also apparent that GEF alone won't be able to meet all the expectation of lakes in the world in need of basin management program. Exploration for new and innovative approaches for partnership among key agencies would become extremely important.

30

31 Toward Enhancement of the Global Lake Basin Management Knowledge Base

32

33 Amply evident throughout the process of LBMI Project was the importance of developing the broad and reliable knowledge base for lake basin management. Development and 34 35 enhancement of knowledge base for better management of individual lakes is extremely 36 important. However, with limited financial and manpower resources to go around, a great 37 many lakes in developing world will continue to suffer from meager knowledge base that won't be effectively updated or upgraded. The international technical cooperation 38 39 agencies, scientific communities, local and international NGOs specializing in lake basin 40 management must collectively seek ways to mobilize resources to help those lakes to be 41 able to take advantage of the exiting knowledge base for better management as well as 42 for being able to generate important information resources that will themselves form the 43 knowledge base useful for better management of lake basins elsewhere. This is 44 particularly important today as the threats to lakes in the world have been increasing 45 rather dramatically due to increased global risks leading to increased vulnerability. 46 Perhaps, use of the modern information management technologies, be they planning 47 tools like GIS, remote sensing, database management, computerized models, etc., will 48 greatly facilitate the organization, management and use of the knowledge base as 49 exemplified in many of the lake briefs. 50

Appendix A: Economics, Total Value, and Total Economic Value (TEV)

3 4

5

The concept of Total Value and Total Economic Value (TEV)

6 The value, or economic value, of the lake and its resources is composed of many 7 different components. Some components are very tangible and visible (fish caught or 8 water extracted) while other uses may be very intangible or difficult to measure (the cultural benefits of a lake; certain biodiversity values). When all the various uses and 9 10 benefits are identified and their separate values are included in the analysis (to the extent possible) economists refer to this as the Total Economic Value (TEV) approach. 11 This approach merely recognizes the reality that any natural resource system has many 12 13 different uses and users, and each use has its own contribution in economic terms to the 14 value of the resource. Whether one calls this approach a Total Valve approach, or a Total Economic Value approach, really does not matter—they are actually the same thing. 15 16

17 The TEV approach includes both use and non-use values alike (see Figure A.1). Use

values are those benefits that come from direct use of, or interaction with the lake (e.g. fishing, extracting water, or transportation on the lake). Non-use values are benefits that do not require any direct interaction with the lake itself. Examples of non-use values include the benefit from just knowing that the lake is there, or the benefit from knowing that one's children will be able to enjoy the lake. Obviously a major challenge to estimating TEV is putting "prices" or economic values on many uses that are not normally bought and sold in the market (this is particularly true for non-use values).

25

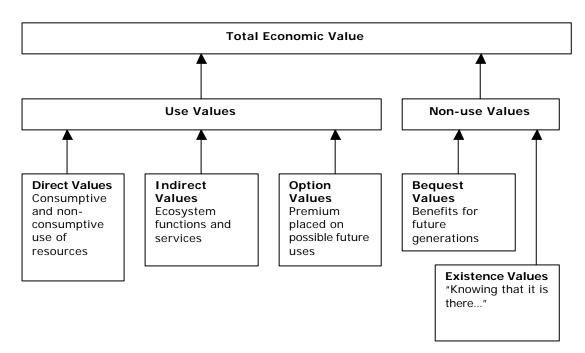
Modern environmental economics has developed a number of valuation approaches and techniques that can be used to value the different components of TEV, including those

that do not normally have a market price (such as the various types of non-use values).

29 Numerous books exist on these techniques and their applications and Box A.1 in

30 Appendix A gives a brief introduction to some of these major valuation approaches.

31



32



Figure A.1. Total Economic Value

While a complete, formal TEV calculation is rarely done (because of the data and time necessary to do it), the strength of the concept is in reminding us that there are a

37 **number of components to the value of any resource**—some that are quite easy to

1 identify and measure, others that may be quite difficult to value in monetary terms. As

2 such, the TEV approach helps the decision maker/planner to think about who are the

3 various stakeholders and whose values (welfare) will be affected by different

4 management options.

5

6 Although doing a complete, formal TEV analysis can be time consuming and difficult, an 7 informal, conceptual TEV analysis can be done quickly and at low cost by using an expert opinion approach (including of course representative stakeholders from the lake basin 8 itself). This conceptual TEV can be done formally in a Delphi type exercise, or more 9 10 informally in a roundtable guided discussion. (A Delphi approach is an expert-opinion based system where a facilitator is used to reach a consensus and reduce the impact of 11 12 different experts personality on the final outcome.) Using either approach, reasonable 13 qualitative results can be obtained relatively quickly. Appendix Boxes A.2 and A.3 illustrate the use of the TEV approach at Laguna de Bay and Lake Sevan, respectively. 14 15 The Laguna de Bay lake brief explicitly carried out a TEV exercise and attempted to estimate the economic values for a number of different components of the TEV. In the 16 case of Lake Sevan a TEV exercise was not done but could have been carried out based 17 18 on the material presented in the lake brief.

19

20 Since the TEV approach is a "social welfare approach"—one in which the "whole" (the 21 total social welfare) is equal to "the sum of the parts" (individual welfare measures)-the 22 differing values and preferences of ALL of the stakeholders in the lake basin should be 23 reflected. The implication of this assumption is that since changes in well-being (or 24 welfare) of ANY stakeholder is part of the total analysis, an appropriate management 25 structure will take into account welfare changes anywhere in the lake basin, not just for 26 any narrowly defined group (e.g. fishermen, water users, transportation providers). As 27 such, the TEV approach is very appropriate when the decision maker is trying to take a 28 lake basin perspective, and reflect the concerns and interests of ALL of the participants/ 29 stakeholders in the lake basin economy. Note that the TEV analysis is NOT done by a 30 group process—stakeholders views obviously are crucial in identifying the different 31 components of the TEV but the actual quantitative work is usually done by highly trained 32 economists. The decision makers then uses or presents the results to all stakeholders to 33 receive their comments and reactions.

34

35 TEV is not a short cut analytical approach—it does not come up with any "easy to

implement" solutions where everyone will be happy or satisfied. TEV can, however,
explicitly (and often quantitatively) identify the causes of problems and who are the likely
winners and losers from any proposed changes in policy. As such, a TEV analysis helps
identify areas where decision makers need to place special attention.

40

In addition to the problem of identifying prices or values (the valuation issue discussed in Box A.1) the implementation of a TEV-type study will also require that the analyst explicitly consider externalities and equity concerns. Externalities are pervasive in the environment and are related to a "dis-connect" between where an action is taken and those affected by the action (see Box 2.1). Equity concerns relate to who benefits and who losses from any change, and the relative economic position of each group (see Box 2.2).

48

49 A With-project and Without-project Framework is Applied 50

The economic analysis should be done in a with-project/without-project framework. That is, it asks what would happen with the proposed project or policy and what would happen without it. As such the analysis tries to understand the impact of the proposed intervention, not merely describe what will the situation before and after the intervention. This is illustrated by Figure A.2 where the without-project state (perhaps water quality) is seen by line A. Water quality degrades over time. Two with-project outcomes are illustrated. In the outcome shown by Line 1 water quality improves over 1 time, while with the outcome shown by Line 2 water quality decreases over time, but still

2 is an improvement over the without-project state (Line A).

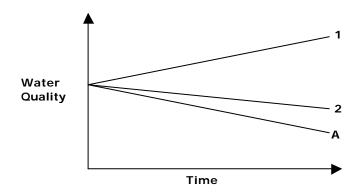


Figure A.2. With/Without Project Analysis

4 5 6

7 With-project and without-project analysis is very important since in some cases even 8 with a management intervention, the "after" situation is worse than the "before" case. 9 Does this mean the project or new policy was a failure?? No, because, as seen in Figure A.2, the relevant comparison is what will be the "after" situation with and without the 10 project. Although water quality continues to decrease even with the project (Line 2), 11 12 without the project the "after" would have been much worse (Line A). The economic 13 measure of the benefit of the project is the difference in the space between Line A and either Line 1 or Line 2. Clearly scientific information is needed to draw the without-14 project line A and project the change in water quality due to the project—either line 1 or 15 16 line 2. It should be noted, however, that in some cases, the results of a project could 17 actually make things worse than doing nothing: that would be illustrated by line 2 being 18 below line A. While this is certainly not common, it does happen and it reflects the 19 complex properties of lakes and their basins.

20

When controlling water pollution in a lake, for example, it may take many years to turn the tide and start to see improvements in water quality (see the discussion of hysteresis in Chapter 2). In Lake Nakuru, sediment loads have begun to decrease many years after the first management interventions were begun. Industrial and municipal pollution, such as measured in Lake Dianchi in China, can take years to clean up (and with rapid population and economic growth, the problem may increase rapidly in the future). But without the investments water quality would never get better.

28

29 A Note of Caution

30

Decision makers are cautious about the usefulness of the economic approach. They worry that the data requirements are too large and that the approach does not reflect both their longer time horizon, and the political realities of lake management (which result in very short time horizons). These are real concerns and therefore it has to be stressed again that an economic analysis should be seen as an **aid to decision making**, not as an analytical approach that gives the definitive answer. Nevertheless the economic approach can be a powerful aid.

38

The economic approach can also be applied at several levels. At the more micro, project level the approach is used to make quantitative economic estimates of benefits and costs of proposed alternative policies or interventions and calculate the net benefits (usually measured in terms of money) of the proposed change. This is often done for individual projects (such as World Bank financed irrigation or water treatment projects). At the macro, basin-wide planning level the economic approach is an organized way to think about how people interact within the lake basin and what are the impacts of individual actions on the whole basin. Actual quantitative analysis (e.g. putting actual numbers on
 each use) is rarely done.

3

The economic framework for evaluating options offers a great deal of flexibility and identifies why the actions of individuals (each of whom we assume is doing the best that they can given the conditions that they face) may result in overall decreases in aggregate well-being (or welfare). The approach also allows consideration of new policies or

8 investments and the potential impacts of them.

9

10 The real strength of an economic framework is probably the insights gained—decision 11 makers gains a deeper understanding of the economic forces driving the system-"why" 12 something happens (identification of the root causes of problems), and the obstacles that 13 have to be overcome at the individual level to implement change—the gains and losses to 14 individuals associated with any policy change. The heavy data requirements of the more 15 detailed, formal approach mean that in practice a full economic analysis is rarely done. None of the 28 case studies explicitly carried out such a TEV analysis (although Boxes 16 A.2 and A.3 show limited applications of the technique in Laguna de Bay and the 17 18 potential for Lake Sevan).

20 Summary: The Goal of an Economic Analysis

21

19

An economic analysis is not an easy solution to the problems of managing a lake and its resources. It should be considered an aid, an input, into the decision making process and an approach that offers a powerful analytical framework that helps the decision maker to understand a number of important features of lake ecosystems. Even if no numbers are estimated, the process of setting up the analysis and talking through the links can produce valuable insights for improved management. These insights include the following:

29

First, who are the stakeholders and who are the likely "winners" and "losers" of any proposed action? How large are the economic values and are these gross values (e.g. value of fish catch) or net values (e.g. the actual "profit" from fishing—that is revenue minus costs) for each affected group?) How much resistance might be expected from any proposed change? (Resistance to change is often closely linked to perceptions of individual loss of income or entitlements.)

36

Second, what are the economic (and sustainability) costs of the present situation and
what are the potential NET gains from improved management? In theory an improved
management structure is one whereby the winners can compensate the losers and still
have a "surplus" left over—thereby increasing total social welfare. What transfer
mechanisms are needed to help compensate potential losers?

42

Third, what policies are needed (and what are their costs) to change the incentives or "rules of the game" so that total well-being (social welfare) is maximized? Remember, the present pattern of mismanagement and resource degradation is the result of many individual decision makers doing the best that they can from their own perspective. They are unlikely to change what they are doing without some change in the "rules of the game" or the costs and benefits that they perceive. This can take the form of economic or institutional measures, incentives or policing.

50

Fourth, how are equity and distributional issues addressed in order to insure that those whose well-being has been hurt by any change in management are actually helped in practice (not just in theory) from the proposed changes? It is one thing to say that total social welfare has increased, it is quite another to say that the needed transfers have actually taken place!

Fifth, the need for trained professionals to do the analysis. As with any other science,
economic analysis requires special training. It is important that whoever does an
economic analysis should be a trained and experienced economist. The decision maker,
however, has an important role to play in setting the boundaries for the analysis, and
may want to discuss the following issues in defining the terms of reference for any study:

- Whose values to include in the analysis and how much weight to give to different stakeholders? Might values differ depending on the social-economic position of different groups (e.g. marginalized groups, citizens vs. non-citizens, differing economic levels)?
- Where should the physical boundary for the analysis be drawn (that is, how much of the lake basin should be included in the study), and how does one incorporate regional and international concerns?
- How can both "social" and "economic/financial" objectives be incorporated in the management scheme?
- How can international concerns from "stakeholders" who are not physically
 present in the lake basin be recognized or included? This is particularly relevant
 when there are important biodiversity benefits in the watershed and the non-use
 values of other global citizens may be important benefit of the lake.
 - How can scientific uncertainty and global change processes be handled (e.g. climate change, protection of genetic diversity, others). Some form of sensitivity analysis may be required to address uncertainty.

Any economic analysis that is carried out should, of course, have a peer review to validate the results. Fortunately there is a growing international literature and experience on doing analyses of this sort that can be called upon. Among this growing literature are the following references: Pearce and Turner (1990), Tietenberg (1992), Dixon et al. (1994), Kolstad (2000), Field and Field (2002), and Sterner (2003) among others.

Box A.1. Economic Valuation of Environmental Goods and Services

A wide range of valuation techniques exist that can be used to value environmental goods and services and the various categories found in the TEV approach. The following paragraphs list some of the most commonly used valuation techniques and gives a one-sentence description for each technique. For more information on the techniques see standard references such as Tietenberg (1992), Pearce and Turner (1990), Winpenny (1991) or Dixon et al (1995). The following typology is from Dixon et al. (1995).

Generally Applicable Techniques (valuation techniques that rely on observed changes in quantities and market prices):

- Change in production approach—relies on physical changes in the production of some good and services (e.g. a fishery; reeds; peat) valued at appropriate market prices.
- Cost of illness approach—uses information on changes in human health and the costs of treatment, lost work time and pain and suffering (e.g. from polluted water); does not handle premature death well.
- Opportunity cost approach—examines what is given up to protect or conserve some resource (e.g. a national park or a wetland) by measuring the value of the alternative use that is denied.
- Preventive expenditures—uses information on expenditures people take to protect themselves or their property from some environmental problem (e.g. flooding, poor water quality, noise, others)
- Replacement costs—uses information to estimate the cost of replacing a good or service damaged by changing environmental conditions (e.g. relocating water intakes or other facilities as a result of changes in shoreline or aquatic weed infestation).

Potentially Applicable Techniques (valuation techniques that rely on surveys and inferred values):

- Travel cost approach—uses information on the time and costs of travelers (often to a recreational site like a park or protected area) to derive a demand curve and estimate unpaid for value (consumer's surplus) enjoyed by visitors.
- Property value (hedonic) approaches—uses information on land or property values to estimate the premium associated with changes in environmental quality (e.g. cleaner lake water, better views).
- Survey-based valuation techniques—also referred to as contingent valuation methods (CVM), these techniques use surveys of individuals to estimate willingness-to-pay for various changes (or states) in environmental quality; commonly used to value such non-use values such as option value, bequest value and existence value. Also used to value premature loss of life.

1

Box A.2. Laguna de Bay Partial TEV Analysis

The only lake brief that attempted even a partial application of the Total Economic Value approach is Laguna de Bay in the Philippines. The actual analysis focused on the environmental resources in the lake watershed and estimated changes in their values due to a pollution control project. It used the TEV approach to help organize thinking about what to include in the project analysis. As the lake brief states (Laguna de Bay brief, p.14):

"the approach started with an examination of the uses of Laguna de Bay, such as for fisheries, irrigation, sources of domestic water, recreation, bird sanctuary, habitat of a variety of flora and fauna. The notion of "use" does not imply that absence of "observable" use is no use at all. All resources have a use even if it is not directly observable, thus the total economic value was computed as:

Total economic Value = Use Value + Non-use Value."

The case study further discussed the ideas of direct uses and indirect uses, as well as non-use value like existence, option and bequest values. Although the case mentioned the wide range of values usually found in the TEV framework, the actual analysis was a partial analysis since it confined its estimates to "important direct uses only and (did) not include other direct and indirect uses, option and non-use values".

As presented in the case study the following economic values were calculated for the Laguna de Bay system for fisheries and water-related uses (using a with-project and without-project framework and the methodology described in Table 1 from the Laguna de Bay Brief):

Fisheries: Fish catch were valued using market prices and the values for 1984 (about P53 million) were compared to the year 2000 (P28 million). A link to increased water pollution was made and the expected benefits of a pollution control project were estimated. Using a with-project and without-project framework the value of avoided fishery losses with the project was some **P7 million** per year (based on changes in fish catch and market prices for fish).

Irrigation, **domestic water supply**, **and recreation**: The TEV analysis also identified benefits from irrigation, domestic water supply, and recreation as components of the TEV that would be affected by the project. Using a "cost avoided" approach which looks at the costs savings by not having to supply water uses from alternative, presumably more expensive, sources, the analysis estimated the benefits to be P70 million per year for irrigation, **P0.5 million** per year for domestic water supply, and some **P5 million** per year for tourism.

Discussion:

While these estimates have to be considered as "rough", the change in the economic value of these 4 uses due to the project was estimated at about **P82 million** per year. The quantitative analysis did not include estimates in the changes in other values—e.g. indirect use values, or various non-use values. These would have increased the benefits from the project. Still, this example illustrates how one can apply the concept of values based on the TEV framework and then carry out a partial analysis on selected values. If the estimates reported in the study are correct, the analysis points out the economic importance of irrigated agriculture and fisheries, and their direct link to lake water quality.

 Table 1 (from Laguna de Bay Experience and Lessons Learned Brief)

Nature of Direct Use	Method used to compute benefits
Fisheries	Value of fish catch lost without the project
Irrigation	Additional cost of sourcing water without the project
Industrial cooling	No benefits computed, but the benefits equal the additional cost of adopting alternative technologies for industrial cooling
Domestic	Cost avoided in extracting drinking water from alternative source
Recreational activities	Value of recreational benefits lost without the project
Power generation	No economic benefit (for hydropower plants)

1

Box A.3. Socio-Economic Valuation in Lake Sevan, Armenia

Lake Sevan and its basin provide numerous services to Armenia. In the Lake Sevan brief the discussion of the socio-economic values can easily be arranged into different categories used in the Total Economic Value approach. The main focus in the brief is on direct use values; the brief states "all these products have direct use values because they have market price(s)". But other types of values are also mentioned. Based on the information presented in the brief (see pages 9-11) the following groupings of goods and services can be made:

Direct use (consumptive): sand, gravel, mineral water, peat, reeds, willow branches, wood, mushrooms, other plants, fish, birds, mammals for meat and fur, frogs, and benthic invertebrates.

Direct use (non-consumptive): tourism, water recreation, bird watching, education, research, and aesthetic appreciation.

Indirect use: hydroelectric power generation, irrigation downstream, water supply for livestock and human consumption.

Non-use values: option, existence and bequest values related to the cultural and historical importance of Lake Sevan to Armenians—both in Armenia and abroad.

No quantitative estimate of any of these values is presented in the brief. However by listing these different categories of use it quickly becomes clear that the lake and its ecosystem provides a wide range of goods and services, only some of which are captured in market prices. The direct-use values (both consumptive and non-consumptive) could be calculated fairly easily. It will take more work to estimate the indirect use and non-use values. However, the cultural/historical values (non-use values) are considered so important that an investment project to help stabilize and restore the lake level is being re-evaluated incorporating some of these values (the project originally did not pass a narrow benefit-cost analysis test).

The analysis of Armenian willingness-to-pay for restoration of the lake's level was done using various survey based techniques (the contingent valuation approach—CVM). Later work will extend the survey to Armenians living abroad—a very large population (larger than in Armenia itself) and with much higher incomes. The preliminary results from Armenia (Wang, 2003) indicate an average monthly willingness-to-pay by Yerevan residents (the capital city) to a special "restore the lake level fund" of about \$0.50 per month for 3 years (a total of about \$18 per person). This is largely a payment for non-use values since most Armenians do not visit the lake frequently. (Lake visitors are expected to have a larger willingness-to-pay since they have direct interaction with the resource).

Discussion:

The Lake Sevan brief does a good job of discussing the various types of values associated with a healthy Lake Sevan. Although not done for the brief it would be possible to make monetary estimates of many of the direct use values (and some of the indirect use values) using available information. The CVM survey to estimate nonuse values yielded useful information on the size of these values. It is expected that if a collection mechanism could be devised, the expatriate Armenian WTP values would be much larger and could yield a sizeable amount of money.

The TEV approach has yielded an immediate benefit. The potential funders of several schemes to stabilize or raise the lake level have decided to re-evaluate their decision NOT to fund these investments, and re-consider the decision and take into account non-use values. Note that the non-use values themselves may be sufficient to change the investment decision, even if all the other use values are not included.

1 Appendix B: Project Details

Key Organizations Involved in this Project

5 The main sponsor of this project, as well as a funder of projects at half of the lakes studied here, is the Global Environment Facility (GEF: www.gefweb.org). GEF is unique in 6 7 that it provides co-financing to cover the "incremental cost" of the portion of projects that provides international environmental benefits (such as biodiversity conservation and 8 9 greenhouse gas reduction). The GEF in principle does not fund the part of projects that provide national-level benefits; this cost is to be met by other co-financers including the 10 national governments themselves. GEF co-financing for this project is based on the 11 12 assumption that the output of the project will have global benefits for the management 13 of lakes everywhere.

14

3

4

The GEF has three agencies which implement its co-financed projects: The World Bank (implementing agency for this project: www.worldbank.org), United Nations

17 Development Programme (UNDP; www.undp.org) and United Nations Environment

18 Programme (UNEP; www.unep.org). The World Bank is providing financial support for this

19 project through a grant from the Bank Netherlands Water Partnership Program. Each of

20 these implementing agencies has projects involving lakes in addition to the GEF funded

21 projects described here. Although not a GEF-implementing agency, the RAMSAR

22 Convention on Wetlands (an intergovernmental treaty which provides the framework for

23 national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of

24 wetlands and their resources signed in Ramsar, Iran, in 1971) is an important

25 organization in this project as most of the lakes covered here contain a RAMSAR site.

26

The International Lake Environment Committee Foundation (ILEC, www.ilec.or.jp) is the executing agency for this project. ILEC is an international NGO formed in 1986 with the support of Shiga Prefectural Government (along with ILEC, Shiga is also a financial

30 sponsor of this project; www.pref.shiga.go.jp) in order to foster sustainable management

31 of the world's lakes. ILEC has worked in close partnership with LakeNet

32 (www.worldlakes.org), an NGO headquartered in Annapolis, MD, USA, to carry out the

project and to produce this report. LakeNet is a global network of over 1000 people and

34 organizations in over 80 countries dedicated to the conservation and sustainable

development of lake ecosystems. LakeNet's participation in this project is supported by agrant from USAID (www.usaid.gov).

37

All of the agencies discussed above (with the exception of ILEC and LakeNet) are
members of the project's Steering Committee, which is chaired by the World Bank, and
has approved this document.

41

42 **Objectives and Outcomes**

43

This project draws lessons from the implementation and achievements of lake management projects funded both by the Global Environment Facility (GEF) and by other sources. Its particular objectives are (1) to document the management experiences through lake case studies; (2) to facilitate the sharing of experiences between decision makers and stakeholders; (3) to accelerate learning and implementation of effective lake and reservoir management; and (4) to improve the quality of lake and reservoir management.

51

52 The outcomes of this project include (1) lessons for improving GEF and World Bank-

53 supported lake management projects; (2) improved understanding and enhanced

54 capacity for implementing principles of sound lake management; and (3) improved

sharing and dissemination of information on lake management programs to national and

56 local governments, lake management practitioners, non-governmental organizations,

57 donor organizations and other stakeholders in lake basins.

2 Lake Selection and Characteristics

3 4 The project was based on a review of experiences and lessons learned at 28 lake basins 5 around the world. A list of those lakes, along with some basic information, is given in 6 Table B.1. Because there are around five million lakes (the exact count is not established 7 and changes through time) on the earth, the sample of 28 is unlikely to cover all issues 8 related to lake management. We have tried, however, to select lakes that would yield 9 significant lessons about management while maintaining a good balance among features 10 such as location, climate, water type, and other variables. The 28 lakes nonetheless 11 represent some of the major freshwater and saline lakes in the world and all of the lakes 12 with projects funded by the GEF.

13 14

1

Table B.1. Characteristics of the 28 Selected Lakes Needs finishing

Lakes	Water type	Origin	Climate	Basin Type	Countries
Africa				21	
Baringo*	Fresh	Tectonic (?)	Semi-arid (various types within basin)	Closed	Kenya
Chad*	Fresh (due to high groundwater loss)	hydrographic?		Closed	Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Niger, Nigeria plus others?
Kariba	Fresh	Artificial		Open	Zambia, Zimbabwe plus up/downstream?
Malawi/Nyasa*	Fresh	Tectonic		Usually open (but with major evaporation; closed 1915- 37)	Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania
Naivasha	Fresh (due to high groundwater loss)		Semi-arid	Closed (for surface)	Kenya
Nakuru	Saline	Tectonic	Semi-arid	Closed	Kenya
Tanganyika* Victoria*	Fresh			Open	
Victoria	110311			Open	
Asia					
Aral*	Saline		Arid	Closed	Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan; Afghanistan, Iran, Kyrgyz Republic, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan
Baikal*	Fresh	Tectonic (rift valley)		Open	Russia; Mongolia
Bhoj Wetland		Artificial			India
Biwa	Fresh	Tectonic	Temperate	Open	Japan
Chilika	Brakish		Tropical	Coastal	India
Dianchi	Fresh	Tectonic		Open	China
Issyk-kul	Saline	Tectonic		Closed	Kyrgyzstan
Laguna de Bay	Fresh (with salinity intrusion)		Tropical	Open	Philippines
Toba	Fresh	Tectonic	Tropical	Open	Indonesia
Tonle Sap*	Fresh	Floodplain	Tropical	Mixed Flow	Cambodia
Xingkai/Khanka*	Fresh			Open	China, Russia

Europe

	Constance	Fresh	Glacial	Temperate	Open	Austria, Germany, Switzerland; Liechtenstein
	Ohrid*	Fresh	Tectonic		Open	Albania, Macedonia; Greece
	Peipsi/Chudskoe*	Fresh			Open	Estonia, Russia; Latvia (Or do we say EU, Russia?)
	Sevan	Fresh	Tectonic (Volcanic p3?)		Open	Armenia
	North America					
	Champlain	Fresh	Glacial	Temperate	Open	Canada, USA
	Cocibolca	Fresh	Tectonic	Tropical (see p 9)	Open	Nicaragua; Costa Rica
	Great Lakes	Fresh	Glacial	Temperate	Open	Canada, USA
	South America					
	Titicaca*	Fresh		Tropical Mountain	Open	Bolivia, Peru
	Tucurui	Fresh	Artificial	Tropical	Open	Brazil
1		F project are r				ountries, the countries
2 3	following a semi-color					
4 5	Lake Briefs, Then	natic Papers	and Regiona	l Workshops		
6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22	 Experience and Lessons Learned Briefs (lake briefs) were developed for the 28 selected lakes. The lake briefs were meant to highlight the management experiences in diverse lake basins, organized in a consistent manner to facilitate comparisons between lakes. The full outline given to the lake brief authors is included on the CD-ROM. A list of authors is also included. Three regional review workshops were held in North America (hosted by Saint Michael's College, in Burlington, Vermont in June 2003), Asia (hosted by the Lake Laguna Development Authority in Manila, Philippines in September 2003) and Africa (the Pan-African START Secretariat in Nairobi, Kenya, in November 2003), attracting participation and input from over 200 people representing stakeholders from XXX countries. The workshops were the main opportunity for discussion and debate on the lake briefs. A total of 16 Thematic Papers were also prepared during the course of the project in order to compliment the lake briefs and to highlight specific global or regional issues. These papers, as well as a list of authors, are included in the CD-ROM. 				iences in diverse is between lakes. ROM. A list of by Saint Michael's te Laguna Africa (the Pan- acting participation ountries. The he lake briefs. of the project in regional issues.	
23	Website Clearing	house and e	e-Forum			
24 25 26 27 28 29 30	To facilitate the wind project also support were posted, and f although it did not thematic papers.	rted the enh rom which a	ancement of L number were	akeNet's webs downloaded.	site, where A e-forum	the documents also was developed,
30 31 32	Steering Commit	Steering Committee				
33	To be completed.					
34 35 36	Working Group M	eetings				
37 38	To be completed.					

- Appendix C: List of Experience and Lessons Learned Brief and
 Thematic Paper Authors
 3
- To be finalized. Approximately 3-4 pages.

- 1 2 3 4
- Appendix D: Workshop Agendas and Participant Lists

To be developed. Approximately 8 pages.

Appendix E: Summaries of 28 Project Lakes

2-page summaries of each lake, with a basin map, to be supplied by LakeNet from material on the project website.

References

1 2	References
3 4	(To be completed and format unified.)
5 6 7 8	Benería, Lourdes and Martha Roldán. (1987). The Crossroads of Class and Gender: Industrial Homework, Subcontracting, and Household Dynamics in Mexico City. Chicago: University of Chicago Press
9 10 11 12 13	Berkes, Fikret and Carl Folke. "Linking social and ecological systems for resilience and sustainability," in Fikret Berkes and Carl Folke, eds., Linking Social and Ecological Systems: Management practices and social mechanisms for building resilience (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1998): 1-25.
14 15 16 17 18	Clague, Christopher, "The New Institutional Economics and economic development," in Christopher Clague, ed., Institutions and Economic Development: Growth and governance in less-developed and post-socialist countries (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins,1997)
19 20 21	Dixon, J, LF Scura, R Carpenter, and P Sherman (1994). Economic Analysis of Environmental Impacts. London: Earthscan.
22 23 24 25	Duda, Alfred. 2002. Monitoring and Evaluation Indicators for GEF International Waters Projects: Monitoring and Evaluation Working Paper 10. Washington, DC: Global Environment Facility.
26 27 28	Edmondson, W.T. 1970. <i>Phosphorus, nitrogen and algae in Lake Washington after diversion of sewage</i> . Science 169:690-691.
29 30 31	Field, Barry C. and Martha K. Field. 2002. Environmental Economics: An Introduction. New York: McGraw-Hill.
32 33 34	Glantz, M.H. 1999. <u>Creeping Environmental Problems and Sustainable Development in</u> <u>the Aral Sea Basin</u> . Cambridge University Press. United Kingdom. 291 p.
35 36 37	GEF (Global Environment Facility). 2003. International Waters. Operational Strategy of the Global Environment Facility, GEF, Washington, D.C. Chapter 4.
38 39 40	GWP (Global Water Partnership). 2000. <i>IWRM & the Toolbox</i> . Secretariat, Global Water Partnership, Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency, Stockholm. 5 p.
40 41 42 43 44	GLWQA (Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement). 1978. Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement of 1978. U.SCanada International Joint Commission, Great Lakes Regional Office, Windsor, Ontario, Canada.
45 46 47	Holdren, C. W. Jones, J. Taggart. 2001. Managing Lakes and Reservoirs. North American Lake Management Society: Madision, WI, USA.
48 49	Jorgensen, S.E. XXXX.
50 51	Kolstad, Charles D. 2000. Environmental Economics. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
52 53 54 55	Laszlo, J.D., G.N. Golubev and M. Nakayama. 1988. The environmental management of large international basins. The EMINWA Programme of UNEP. Water Resources Development 4:103-107.

1 National Research Council (Committee on Restoration of Aquatic Ecosystems: Science, 2 Technology and Public Policy). 1992. Restoration of Aquatic Ecosystems. National 3 Academy Press: Washington, D.C., USA. 4 5 Ostrom, Elinor. "Investing in capital, institutions, and incentives," in Christopher Clague, 6 ed., Institutions and Economic Development: Growth and Governance in Less-7 Developed and Post-Socialist Countries (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins, 1997): 153-181. 8 9 Pearce, D and K Turner (1990). Economics of Natural Resources and the Environment. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press. 10 11 12 Ramsar Bureau. (2001). Additional Guidance on Reviewing and Action Planning for 13 Wetland Communication, Education and Public Awareness (CEPA), to assist Contracting Parties in implementing Resolution VII.9, the Convention's Outreach 14 15 Program, 1999-2002. [http://www.ramsar.org/outreach_reviewsactionplansl.htm] 16 Rast, W. and J.A. Thornton. 2004. The phosphorus loading concept and OECD Eutrophication 17 18 Programme. Origin, application and capabilities. In: P. O'Sullivan and P. Reynolds, The 19 Lakes Handbook, Vol. 2, Blackwell Science Publishers. IN PRESS. 20 21 Ryding, S.-O. and W. Rast. 1989. The Control of Eutrophication of Lakes and Reservoirs. 22 Man and Biosphere Series, Vol. 1, UNESCO, Paris. 314 p. 23 24 Schindler, D.W. 1977. Evaluation of phosphorus limitation in lakes. Science 195:260-262. 25 26 Sonzogni, W.C., P.D. Uttormark and G.F. Lee. 1976. The phosphorus residence time 27 model. Water Research 10:429-435. 28 29 Sterner, T (2003). Policy Instruments for Environmental and Natural Resource 30 Management. Wshington DC: Resources for the Future. 31 32 Sutherland, William J. (2000). The conservation handbook: research, management and 33 policy. Malden, USA: Blackwell Science, Inc. 278 pp. 34 35 Tietenberg, T (1992). Environmental and Natural Resource Economics. Third Edition. New 36 York: Harper Collins Publishers. 37 Trudel, M., E. Wysokinska, W. Williams and W. Rast. 2002. Lakes and Reservoirs: How to 38 39 involve the public in protecting them from degradation. Kusatsu, Japan: UNEP-IETC 40 and ILEC. 41 42 USEPA and Government of Canada, 1995. The Great Lakes: An Environmental Atlas and 43 Resource Book. Chicago: Great Lakes National Program Office. 44 45 Vollenweider, R.A. 1976. Advances in defining critical loading levels for phosphorus in 46 lake eutrophication. Mem. Ist. Ital. Idrobiol. 33:53-83. 47 48 Wang 2003. 49 World Bank. 2000. Participation review. Washington, D.C.: World Bank. 50 51 World Lake Vision Committee. 2003. World Lake Vision. International Lake Environment 52 Committee, Shiga (Japan) Prefectural Government, and International Environment 53 Technology Centre, United Nations Environment Program. 36 p. 54 55

- 1 Glossary